ENGLISH

ESPAÑOL

FRANÇAIS

CD RECEIVER KD-A305/KD-R300

RECEPTOR CON CD KD-A305/KD-R300

RÉCEPTEUR CD KD-A305/KD-R300

For canceling the display demonstration, see page 7.
Para cancelar la demostración en pantalla, consulte la página 7.
Pour annuler la démonstration des affichages, référez-vous à la page 7.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
Para la instalación y las conexiones, refiérase al manual separado.
Pour l'installation et les raccordements, se référer au manuel séparé.

For customer Use:
Enter below the Model No. and Serial No. which are located on the top or bottom of the cabinet. Retain this information for future reference.
Model No.
Serial No.

INSTRUCTIONS
MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES
MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS

GET0570-001A
[J]

ENGLISH

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

INFORMATION (For U.S.A.)

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

– Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
– Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
– Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
– Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Caution:

Changes or modifications not approved by JVC could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** (For U.S.A.) Visible and/or invisible class II laser radiation when open. Do not stare into beam.
   (For Canada) Visible and/or invisible class 1M laser radiation when open. Do not view directly with optical instruments.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION	ATTENTION	AVISO	VARNING	注意	CAUTION
VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS. IEC60825-1:2001 (ENG)	RAYONNEMENT LASER VISIBLE ET/OU INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 1M UNE FOIS OUVERT. NE PAS REGARDER DIRECTEMENT AVEC DES INSTRUMENTS OPTIQUES. (FRA)	RADIACIÓN LÁSER DE CLASE 1M VISIBLE Y/O INVISIBLE CUANDO ESTÁ ABIERTO. NO MIRAR DIRECTAMENTE CON INSTRUMENTAL ÓPTICO. (ESP)	SYNLIG OCH/ELLER OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, KLASS 1M, NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN MED OPTISKA INSTRUMENT. (SWE)	ここを開くと可視及び/または不可視のクラス 1M レーザー放射が出ます。光学機器で直接見ないでください。 (JPN)	VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS II LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM. FDA 21 CFR (ENG)

[European Union only]

Warning:

If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.

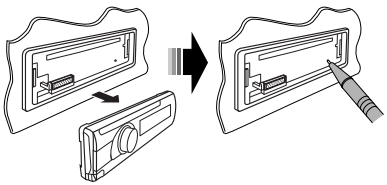
For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

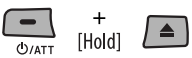
If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

How to reset your unit



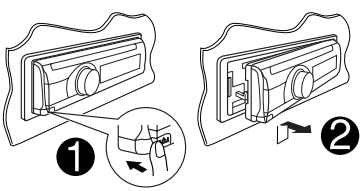
- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased (except the registered Bluetooth device, see page 10).*

How to forcibly eject a disc

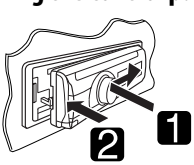


- *Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.*
- *If this does not work, reset your unit.*

Detaching the control panel



Attaching the control panel



Caution on volume setting:

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

CONTENTS

OPERATIONS

Basic operations 4
- Using the control panel 4
- Using the remote controller (RM-RK50) 5

Preparation 7
Listening to the radio 8
Disc operations 9

EXTERNAL DEVICES

Using the Bluetooth® devices 10
- Using the Bluetooth cellular phone 12
- Using the Bluetooth audio player 13

Listening to the HD Radio™ Broadcast 14
Listening to the CD changer 15
Listening to the satellite radio 16
Listening to the iPod 18
Listening to the other external components 19

SETTINGS

Selecting a preset sound mode 20
Title assignment 21
Bluetooth settings 22
Menu operations 23
Color settings 26

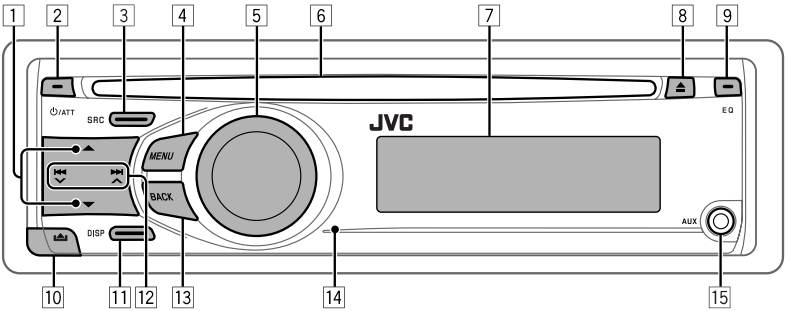
REFERENCES

More about this unit 27
Troubleshooting 30
Maintenance 35
Specifications 36

ENGLISH

Basic operations

Using the control panel



1 • **FM/AM**: Select preset station.
• **HD RADIO**: Select channel.
• **SIRIUS/XM**: Select category.
• **CD/CD-CH**: Select folder.
• **IPOD**: Enter the main menu/Pause playback/Confirm selection.
• **BT-PHONE/BT-AUDIO**: Enter/go back to previous Bluetooth menu.

2 • Turn on the power.
• Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).
• Turn off the power [Hold].

3 Select the source.
FM/HD RADIO FM*1 → **AM/HD RADIO AM***1, *2 → **SIRIUS***3**/XM***3 → **CD***3 → **CD-CH***3**/IPOD***3 (or **EXT INPUT**) → **BT-PHONE***3 → **BT-AUDIO***3 → **AUX IN***2 → (back to the beginning)

4 • Enter list operations.
• Enter Menu setting [Hold].

5 • Control the volume or selection [Turn].*4
• Confirm the selection [Press].*4
• **FM/HD Radio**: Enter SSM preset mode [Hold].*4
• **CD/CD-CH/IPOD**: Enter playback mode [Hold].*4

6 Loading slot

7 Display window

8 Eject disc.

9 Select the sound mode.

10 Detach the panel.

11 Change the display information.

12 • **FM/AM/HD RADIO/SIRIUS/XM**: Search for station/channel.
• **CD/CD-CH**: Select track.
• **IPOD**: Select track.
• **BT-PHONE/BT-AUDIO**: Select setting item/registered device.

13 Return to the previous menu.

14 Remote sensor

15 AUX (auxiliary) input jack

*1 *When the HD Radio tuner box is connected, the built-in tuner of this unit will be disabled. To listen to the HD Radio broadcast, refer to "Listening to the radio" on page 8. For more features, see page 14.*

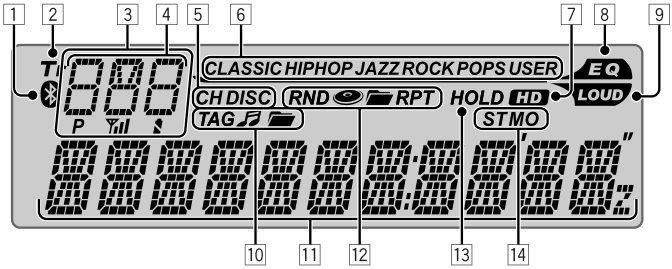
*2 *You cannot select these sources if they were disabled in the Menu (see "Menu operations" on page 26).*

*3 *You cannot select these sources if they are not ready or not connected.*

*4 *Also known as "Control dial" in this manual.*

You can change the display and button illumination (see "COLOR" on page 24).

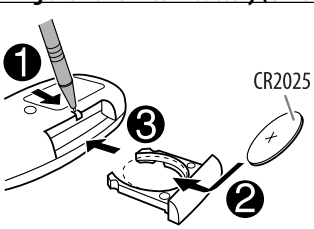
Display window



1. Bluetooth indicator
2. Tr (track) indicator
3. Status of Bluetooth device (Device number, [P: 1 – 5]; signal strength, [: 0 – 3]*; battery reminder, [: 0 – 3]*)
   * *As the number increases, the signal/battery power becomes stronger.*
4. Source display / Track number / Folder number / Time countdown indicator
5. Playback source indicators—CH (CD changer), DISC
6. Sound mode indicators—CLASSIC, HIP HOP, JAZZ, ROCK, POPS, USER
7. HD (HD Radio) indicator
8. EQ (equalizer) indicator
9. LOUD (loudness) indicator
10. Disc information indicators—TAG (Tag information), (track/file), (folder)
11. Main display
12. Playback mode / item indicators—RND (random), (disc), (folder), RPT (repeat)
13. HOLD indicator
14. Tuner reception indicators—ST (stereo), MO (monaural)

Using the remote controller (RM-RK50)

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)



Caution:

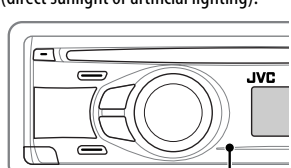
- Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.
- Battery shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire, or the like.

If the effectiveness of the remote controller decreases, replace the battery.

For USA-California Only:
This product contains a CR Coin Cell Lithium Battery which contains Perchlorate Material—special handling may apply.
See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate

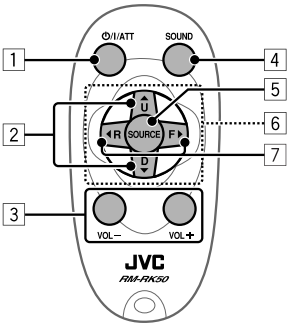
Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).



Remote sensor

Continued on the next page



1 • Turns the power on if pressed briefly or attenuates the sound when the power is on.
• Turns the power off if pressed and held.

2 • Changes the tuner/HD Radio preset stations.
• Changes the folder of the MP3/WMA.
• While playing an MP3 disc on an MP3-compatible CD changer:
– Changes the disc if pressed briefly.
– Changes the folder if pressed and held.
• While listening to the satellite (SIRIUS or XM) radio:
– Changes the categories.
• While listening to an Apple iPod:
– Pauses or resumes playback with D ▼.
– Enters the main menu with ▲ U.
(Now ▲ U/D ▼/◄ R/F ► work as the menu selecting buttons.)*

* ▲ U : *Returns to the previous menu.*
D ▼ : *Confirms the selection.*

3 Adjusts the volume level.

4 Selects the sound mode.

5 Selects the source.

6 For Bluetooth cellular phone:
– Answers calls if pressed briefly.
– Rejects calls if pressed and held.

7 • Searches for stations if pressed briefly.
• Fast-forwards or reverses the track if pressed and held.
• Changes the tracks if pressed briefly.
• While listening to the satellite radio:
– Changes the channels if pressed briefly.
– Changes the channels rapidly if pressed and held.
• While listening to an iPod (in menu selecting mode):
– Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press D ▼ to confirm the selection.)
– Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.
• Reverse skip/forward skip for Bluetooth audio.

Warning (to prevent accidents and damage):

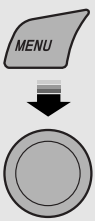
- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent.
- Do not leave the remote controller in a place (such as dashboards) exposed to direct sunlight for a long time.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach.
- Do not recharge, short, disassemble, heat the battery, or dispose of it in a fire.
- Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
- Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
- Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.

KD-A305 is equipped with the steering wheel remote control function.
- See the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume) for connection.

Preparation

Cancel the display demonstration and set the clock

- See also page 23.

1		**Turn on the power.**
2		**Cancel the display demonstrations** Select "DEMO," then "DEMO OFF." **Set the clock** Select "CLOCK" → "CLOCK SET." Adjust the hour, then press control dial once to proceed to adjust the minute. • To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

DISP	When the power is turned off: Check the current clock time when "CLOCK DISP" is set to "CLOCK OFF," (see page 23) When the power is turned on: Change the display information of the current source
FM/AM	Station name*1 → Frequency → Clock → (back to the beginning)
CD/CD-CH	Audio CD/CD Text: Disc title/performer*2 → Track title*2 → Current track number with the elapsed playing time → Current track number with the clock time → (back to the beginning) MP3/WMA: Album name/performer (folder name)*3 → Track title (file name)*3 → Current track number with the elapsed playing time → Current track number with the clock time → (back to the beginning)
IPOD	Folder name → Track name → Current track number with the elapsed playing time → Current track number with the clock time → (back to the beginning)
HD RADIO	Call Sign*4 → Frequency → Title/artist/album name of the current segment*5 → Clock → (back to the beginning)
SIRIUS/XM	Category name → Channel name → Artist name → Composer name*6 → Song/program name/title → Clock → (back to the beginning)

*1 *If no title is assigned to a station, "NO NAME" appears. To assign a title to a station, see page 21.*

*2 *If the current disc is an audio CD, "NO NAME" appears.*

*3 *If an MP3/WMA file does not have Tag information or "*TAG DISPLAY*" is set to "*TAG OFF*" (see page 24), folder name and file name appear.*

*4 *"****-FM" or "****" appears when no Call Sign is received.*

*5 *"NO TEXT" appears when no text is received.*

*6 *Only for SIRIUS Satellite radio.*

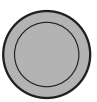
Listening to the radio

1	SRC	**Select "FM" or "AM."**
2		**Search for a station to listen—Auto Search.** Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until "M" flashes on the display, then press it repeatedly. • When receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength, "ST" lights up on the display.

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

• See also page 24.

[Hold]



[Turn] → [Press]

Select "TUNER" → "MONO" → "MONO ON"

Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

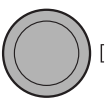
• "MO" lights up on the display.

To restore the stereo effect, repeat the same procedure to select "MONO OFF." The MO indicator goes off.

FM station automatic presetting —SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

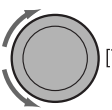
You can preset up to 18 stations for FM.

1 While listening to a station...



[Hold]

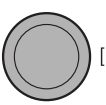
2 Select the preset number range you want to store.



[Turn]

SSM 01–06 ◄► SSM 07–12 ◄► SSM 13–18

3



[Press]

Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically.

• If an HD Radio tuner box is connected, you can also search and store the AM stations.

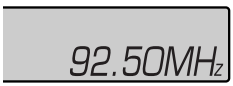
To preset other 6 stations, repeat from step **1** again.

Manual presetting (FM/AM)

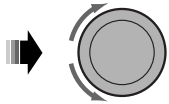
You can preset up to 18 stations for FM and 6 stations for AM.

Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.50 MHz into preset number "04."

1



2 **Select preset number "04."**



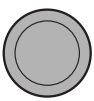
[Turn]

3

[Hold]

Selecting preset station

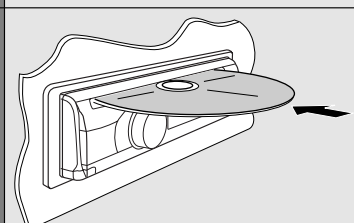
or



[Turn] → [Press]

ENGLISH

Disc operations

1		**Turn on the power.**
2		**Insert a disc.** All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

Stop playing and ejecting the disc

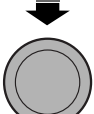
- "NO DISC" appears. Press SRC to listen to another playback source.

Prohibiting disc ejection

\+ [Hold]

To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure.

Selecting a track/folder



[Turn] → [Press]

- For MP3/WMA discs, select the desired folder, then the desired track by performing the control dial.
- To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

Continued on the next page

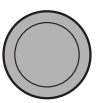
Pressing (or holding) the following buttons allows you to...

	MP3/WMA: Select folder
	[Press] Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track

Selecting the playback modes

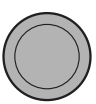
You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time.

1



[Hold]

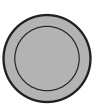
2



[Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT ↔ RANDOM

3



[Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT		
TRACK RPT	:	Repeats current track
FOLDER RPT	:	MP3/WMA: Repeats current folder
RANDOM		
FOLDER RND	:	MP3/WMA: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders
ALL RND	:	Randomly plays all tracks

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "**RPT OFF**" or "**RND OFF**."
- To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

Using the Bluetooth® devices

For Bluetooth operations, it is required to connect the **Bluetooth adapter** (KS-BTA200) (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- Refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth adapter and the Bluetooth device.
- Refer to the list (included in the box) to check the countries where you may use the Bluetooth® function.

To use a Bluetooth device through the unit ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO") for the first time, you need to establish Bluetooth wireless connection between the unit and the device.

- Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit even if you reset your unit. Up to five devices can be registered in total.
- Only one device can be connected at a time for each source ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO").

Registering a Bluetooth device

Registration (Pairing) methods

Use either of the following items in the Bluetooth menu to register and establish the connection with a device.

- Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO" as the source to operate the Bluetooth menu.

OPEN	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the Bluetooth device.
SEARCH	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the unit.

Registering using "OPEN"

Preparation: Operate the device to turn on its Bluetooth function.

1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."

SRC

2 Select "NEW DEVICE."

3 Select "OPEN."

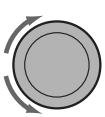
4 Enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number) code to the unit.

- You can enter any number you like (1-digit to 16-digit number). [Initial: 0000]

* *Some devices have their own PIN code. Enter the specified PIN code to the unit.*

1 Move to the next (or previous) number position.

2 Select a number.


[Turn]

3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 until you finish entering a PIN code.

4 Confirm the entry.

"OPEN.." flashes on the display.

5 Use the Bluetooth device to search and connect.

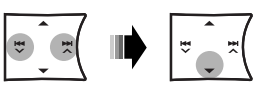
On the device to be connected, enter the same PIN code you have just entered for this unit.
"CONNECTED" appears on the display.
Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

The device remains registered even after you disconnect the device. Use "CONNECT" (or activate "AUTO CNNCT") to connect the same device from next time on. (See the following and page 22.)

Connecting a device

Perform steps **1** and **2** on left column, then...

1 • **Select "SEARCH" to search for available devices.**
The unit searches and displays the list of the available devices. If no available device is detected, "UNFOUND" appears.
• **Select "SPECIAL" to connect a special device.**
The unit displays the list of the preset devices.



2 **Select a device you want to connect.**

3 • **For available devices...**
Enter the specific PIN code of the device to the unit.
Refer to the instructions supplied with the device to check the PIN code.
Use the Bluetooth device to connect.
Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.
• **For special device...**
Use "OPEN" or "SEARCH" to connect.

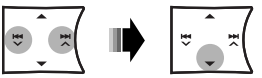
Continued on the next page

ENGLISH

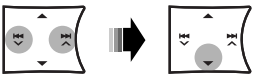
Connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device

1 **Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."**

2 **Select a registered device you want to connect/disconnect/delete.**



3 • **Select "CONNECT" or "DISCONNECT" to connect/disconnect the selected device.**
• **Select "DELETE," then "YES" to delete the selected device.**



You can set the unit to connect the Bluetooth device automatically when the unit is turned on. (See "AUTO CNNCT" on page 22.)

Using the Bluetooth cellular phone

1		**Select "BT-PHONE."**
2		**Enter the Bluetooth menu.**
3	—	**Make a call or setting using the Bluetooth setting menu. (See the following and page 22.)**

When a call comes in....

The source is automatically changed to "BT-PHONE."
- The display will flash in blue (see "RING COLOR" on page 24 for setting.)

When "AUTO ANSWER" is activated....

The unit answers the incoming calls automatically, see page 22.
- When "AUTO ANSWER" is deactivated, press any button (except ⏻/ATT/⏏/▲) to answer the incoming call.
- You can adjust the microphone volume level (see page 22).

To end the call

Hold any button (except ⏻/ATT/⏏/▲).

When a text message comes in....

If the cellular phone is compatible with text message (notified through JVC Bluetooth adapter) and "MSG INFO" (message info) is set to "AUTO" (see page 22), the unit rings to inform you of the message arrival.
- "RCV MESSAGE" (receiving message) appears on the display and the display illuminate in blue (see "RING COLOR" on page 24 for setting).

Making a call

You can make a call using the following methods.

Select "BT-PHONE," then follow the following steps to make a call:
- To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

1 Enter the "DIAL" menu.

2 Select a calling method.

PHONE BOOK ⟷ MISSED ⟷ NUMBER
RECEIVED ⟷ REDIAL ⟷ VOICE DIAL

Call history:

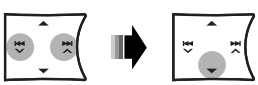
1 Select a call history (REDIAL*, RECEIVED*, MISSED*).
2 Then select a name (if it is acquired) or phone number.

Phone book:

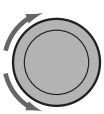
1 Select "PHONE BOOK*".
The list of phone number appears.
2 Select a name from the list.

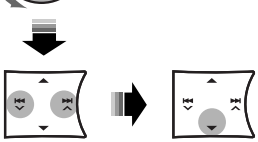
Direct dialing:

1 Select "NUMBER."



2 Enter the phone number.


[Turn]



* *Displays only when your cellular phone is equipped with these functions and is compatible with this unit.*

Voice dialing:

1 Select "VOICE DIAL."

"SAY NAME" appears on the display.

2 Speak the name you want to call.
- If your cellular phone does not support the voice recognition system, "ERROR" appears on the display.
- Using voice tags may be difficult in a noisy environment or during an emergency.

Using the Bluetooth audio player

SRC	**Select "BT-AUDIO."** If playback does not start, operate the Bluetooth audio player to start playback. • Operate the Bluetooth audio player to pause (if playback does not pause when you change the source).

	Reverse skip/forward skip
	Pause/start playback* * Operation may be different according to the connected Bluetooth audio player.
	Enter setting menu (Device list)

- Refer also to page 12 for connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device.

Bluetooth Information:
If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/> (English website only)

Listening to the HD Radio™ Broadcast

Before operating, connect **HD Radio tuner box**, KT-HD300 (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

What is HD Radio Technology?

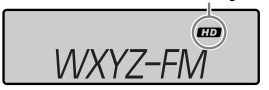
HD Radio Technology can deliver high-quality digital sound—AM digital will have FM-like quality (in stereo) and FM digital will have CD-like quality—with static-free and clear reception. Furthermore, stations can offer text and data, such as artist names and song titles.

- When the HD Radio tuner box is connected, it can also receive conventional analog broadcasts.
- Many HD Radio stations also offer more than one channel of programming. This service is called multicasting.
- To find HD Radio stations in your area, visit <http://www.hdradio.com/>.

Refer also to pages 8 and 9 for basic radio operations.

When receiving an HD Radio station...

[Lights up] When digital audio is broadcast
[Flashes] When analog audio is broadcast



Station Call Sign appears.

When receiving HD Radio multicast channels...

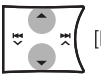
First four letters of Call Sign — Channel number

Select your desired channel.

HD1 ↔ HD2 ↔ HD8

"LINKING" appears while linking to a multicast channel.

Searching for HD Radio stations only



[Hold]

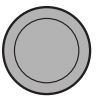
Changing HD Radio reception mode

While receiving an HD Radio broadcast, the unit receives digital or analog audio automatically due to the receiving condition.

While listening to an HD Radio station...

• See also page 24.

[Hold]



[Turn] → [Press]

Select "TUNER" → "BLEND HOLD" → "AUTO"/"DIGITAL"/"ANALOG"

[Lights up] When holding the digital reception
[Flashes] When holding the analog reception

- If no sound can be heard with AUTO, change the setting to ANALOG or DIGITAL.
- The setting automatically changes to AUTO if you tuned in to or change to another station, or if you turned off the power.
- This setting cannot take effect for the conventional FM/AM stations.
- If the radio station forces the reception mode to digital, the HOLD indicator flashes.

Listening to the CD changer

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer (separately purchased) with your unit. You can connect a CD changer to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

- You can only play conventional CDs (including CD Text) and MP3 discs.

Preparation: Make sure "CH / IPOD" is selected in the "SRC SELECT" → "EXT IN" setting, see page 26.

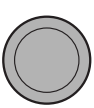
1		**Select "CD-CH."**
2		**Enter the list mode.**
3	[Turn] → [Press]	**Select a disc, folder, then the track.** Playback starts automatically. • If there is no disc on the selected tray, the unit beeps.

- To select a desired folder/track to start playback (for MP3 discs), repeat step **2** and **3** above until the desired folder/track is selected. The selection always start from disc number first.

	MP3: Select folders
	[Press] Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track

Selecting the playback modes

1



[Hold]

2

[Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT ↔ RANDOM

3

[Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT		
TRACK RPT	:	Repeats current track
FOLDER RPT	:	MP3: Repeats all tracks of current folder
DISC RPT	:	Repeats all tracks of the current disc
RANDOM		
FOLDER RND	:	MP3: Randomly plays all tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder
DISC RND	:	Randomly plays all tracks of current disc
ALL RND	:	Randomly plays all tracks of the discs in the magazine

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "**RPT OFF**" or "**RND OFF**."
- To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

Listening to the satellite radio

Before operating, connect either one of the following (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- **JVC SIRIUS satellite radio System**, SC-C1 and KS-SRA100, PnP, SC-VDOC1 and KS-SRA100, for listening to the SIRIUS Satellite radio.
- **XM satellite radio System**, JVC Smart Digital Adapter–XMDJVC100, CNP2000UC and CNPJVC1 for listening to the XM Satellite radio.

GCI (Global Control Information) update

- If channels are updated after subscription, updating starts automatically. "UPDATING" flashes and no sound can be heard.
- Update takes a few minutes to complete.
- During update, you cannot operate your satellite radio.

Activate your SIRIUS subscription after connection

1

2 SRC → SIRIUS

SIRIUS Satellite radio starts updating all the SIRIUS channels.
Once completed, SIRIUS Satellite radio tunes in to the preset channel, CH184.

3 **Check your SIRIUS ID, see page 24.**

4 **Contact SIRIUS on the internet at <http://activate.siriusradio.com/> to activate your subscription, or you can call SIRIUS toll-free at 1-888-539-SIRIUS (7474).**
"SUB UPDT PRESS ANY KEY" scrolls on the display once subscription has been completed.

Activate your XM subscription after connection

- Only Channel 0, 1, and 247 are available before activation.

1

2 SRC → XM

XMDirect™ Tuner Box or XMDirect2 Tuner System starts updating all the XM channels. "Channel 1" is tuned in automatically.

3 **Check your XM Satellite radio ID labelled on the casing of the XMDirect™ Tuner Box or XMDirect2 Tuner System, or tune in to "Channel 0" (see page 17).**

4 **Contact XM Satellite radio on the internet at <http://xmradio.com/activation/> to activate your subscription, or you can call 1-800-XM-RADIO (1-800-967-2346).**
Once completed, the unit tunes in to one of the available channels (Channel 4 or higher).

1	SRC	**Select "SIRIUS" or "XM."**
2		**Select a category.** SIRIUS: If you select "ALL," you can tune in to all the channels of all categories.
3		**Select a channel to listen.** • Holding the button changes the channels rapidly. • While searching, invalid and unsubscribed channels are skipped. XM: If you do not select a channel within 15 seconds, category selected in step **2** is canceled. You can select all channels of all categories now (including non-categorised channels).

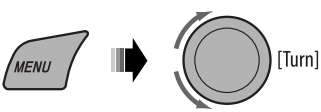
Storing channels in memory

You can preset up to 18 channels for both SIRIUS and XM.

Ex.: Storing channel into preset number "04."

1 Tune in to a channel you want to store (see steps 1 – 3 above).

2 Select preset number "04."



3

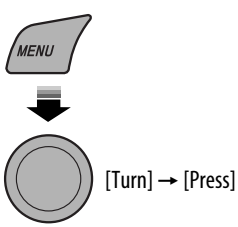
Checking the XM Satellite radio ID

While selecting "XM," select "Channel 0."

The display alternately shows "RADIO ID" and the 8-digit (alphanumeric) ID number.

To cancel the ID number display, select any channel other than "Channel 0."

Selecting SIRIUS/XM preset station



Listening to the iPod

Before operating, connect the **Interface adapter for iPod**, KS-PD100 (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

Preparation: Make sure "CH / IPOD" is selected in the "SRC SELECT" → "EXT IN" setting, see page 26.

1		**Select "IPOD."**
2		**Select a song.** Playback starts automatically.

Selecting a track from the menu

1 Enter the main menu.

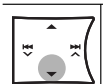
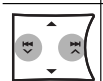
This mode will be canceled if no operations are done for about 5 seconds.

2 Select the desired menu.

PLAYLISTS ↔ **ARTISTS** ↔ **ALBUMS** ↔ **SONGS** ↔ **GENRES** ↔ **COMPOSERS** ↔ (back to the beginning)

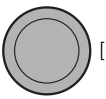
3 Confirm the selection.

- To return to the previous menu, press ▲.
- If a track is selected, playback starts automatically.

	Pause playback • To resume playback, press the button again.
	[Press] Select tracks [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track

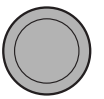
Selecting the playback modes

1



[Hold]

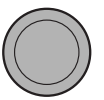
2



[Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT ↔ **RANDOM**

3



[Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT		
ONE RPT	:	Functions the same as "Repeat One" of the iPod.
ALL RPT	:	Functions the same as "Repeat All" of the iPod.
RANDOM		
ALBUM RND*	:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums" of the iPod.
SONG RND	:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs" of the iPod.

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "**RPT OFF**" or "**RND OFF**."
- To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

* *Functions only if you select "ALL" in "ALBUMS" of the main "MENU."*

Listening to the other external components

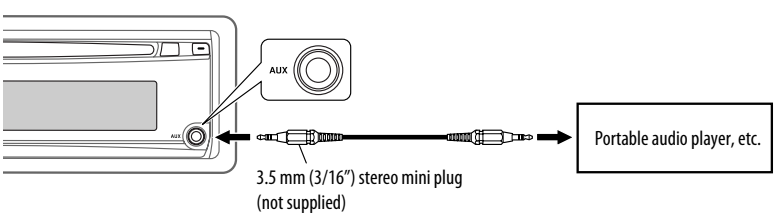
You can connect an external component to:

- CD changer jack on the rear of this unit using the following adapters:
  – **Line Input Adapter**, KS-U57 (separately purchsed)
  – **AUX Input Adapter**, KS-U58 (separately purchsed)
  Preparation: Make sure "EXT INPUT" is selected in the "SRC SELECT" → "EXT IN" setting, see page 26.

- AUX (auxiliary) input jack on the control panel.
  Preparation: Make sure "AUX ON" is selected in the "SRC SELECT" → "AUX IN" setting, see page 26.

1	SRC	**Select "EXT INPUT" or "AUX IN."**
2	—	**Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**
3	+ [Turn] −	**Adjust the volume.**
4	—	**Adjust the sound as you want (see pages 20 and 21).**

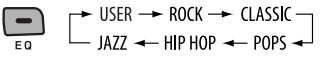
Connecting an external component to the AUX input jack



Selecting a preset sound mode

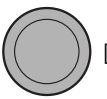
You can select a preset sound mode suitable to the music genre.

- See also page 23 (“EQ”).



or

Selecting from Menu.



Select “EQ”

Preset value setting for each sound mode

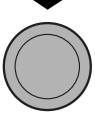
Sound mode	Preset value									
	BASS			MIDDLE			TREBLE			LOUD (loudness)
	Freq.	Level	Q	Freq.	Level	Q	Freq.	Level	Q	
USER	60 Hz	00	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.0	10.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	OFF
ROCK	100 Hz	+03	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	Q1.25	
CLASSIC	80 Hz	+01	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	Q1.25	
POPS	100 Hz	+02	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	+01	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	Q1.25	
HIP HOP	60 Hz	+04	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	–02	Q1.0	10.0 kHz	+01	Q1.25	
JAZZ	80 Hz	+03	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	Q1.25	

Freq.: Frequency Q: Q-slope

Storing your own sound mode

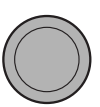
You can store your own adjustments in memory.

1 Select “USER” for “EQ.”



Select “EQ” → “USER”

2 While “USER” is shown on the display...



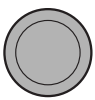
- If no operation is done for about 30 seconds, the operation will be canceled.

3 Select a tone.

[Turn] → [Press]

BASS ↔ MIDDLE ↔ TREBLE

4 Adjust the sound elements of the selected tone.



[Turn] → [Press]

1 Adjust the frequency.
2 Adjust the level.
3 Adjust the Q-slope.

Sound elements	Range/selectable items		
	BASS	MIDDLE	TREBLE
Frequency	60 Hz 80 Hz 100 Hz 120 Hz	500 Hz 1.0 kHz 1.5 kHz 2.5 kHz	7.5 kHz 10.0 kHz 12.5 kHz 15.0 kHz
Level	–06 to +06	–06 to +06	–06 to +06
Q	Q0.5 Q1.0 Q1.5 Q2.0	Q0.75 Q1.0 Q1.25 Q1.5	Q0.75 Q1.25

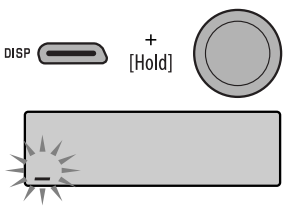
5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to adjust other sound characteristics.
The adjustment made will be stored automatically.

Title assignment

You can assign titles to 30 station frequencies (FM and AM) using 8 characters (maximum) for each title.
- When HD Radio tuner box is connected, this feature will be disable.

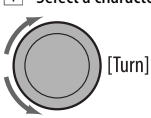
1 Select "FM" or "AM."

2 Show the title entry screen.



3 Assign a title.

1 Select a character.



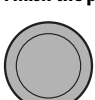
[Turn]

A	B	C	D	E	F	G
H	I	J	K	L	M	N
O	P	Q	R	S	T	U
V	W	X	Y	Z	0	1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	–	/	<	>	space	

2 Move to the next (or previous) character position.

3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 until you finish entering the title.

4 Finish the procedure.



[Press]

To erase the entire title

In step **2** above...

Bluetooth settings

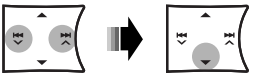
You can change the settings listed on the right column according to your preference.

1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."

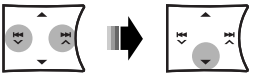
SRC

2 Enter the Bluetooth menu.

3 Select "SETTINGS."



4 Select a setting item.



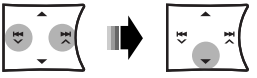
AUTO CNNCT ↔ AUTO ANSWER*1 ↔ MSG INFO*2 ↔ MIC SETTING*1 ↔ VERSION*3

*1 *Appears only when a Bluetooth phone is connected.*

*2 *Appears only when a Bluetooth phone is connected and it is compatible with text message (notified through JVC Bluetooth adapter).*

*3 *Bluetooth Audio: Shows only "Version."*

5 Change the setting accordingly.



Setting menu (__: Initial)

AUTO CNNCT (connect)

When the unit is turned on, the connection is established automatically with...

OFF: No Bluetooth device.

LAST: The last connected Bluetooth device.

ORDER: The available registered Bluetooth device found at first.

AUTO ANSWER

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

ON: The unit answers the incoming calls automatically.

OFF: The unit does not answer the calls automatically. Answer the calls manually.

REJECT: The unit rejects all incoming calls.

MSG INFO (message info)

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

AUTOMATIC: The unit informs you of the arrival of a message by ringing and displaying "RCV MESSAGE" (receiving message).
- The display illuminate in blue (see "RING COLOR" on page 24).

MANUAL: The unit does not inform you of the arrival of a message.

MIC SETTING (microphone setting)

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

Adjust microphone volume connected to the Bluetooth adapter, [LEVEL 01/02/03].

VERSION

The Bluetooth software and hardware versions are shown.

Menu operations

1

[Hold]

2 [Turn] → [Press]

3 **Repeat step 2 if necessary.**
- To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

Initial: **Underlined**

Category	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
DEMO	**DEMO** Display demonstration	• **DEMO ON** : Display demonstration will be activated automatically if no operation is done for about 20 seconds, [7]. • **DEMO OFF** : Cancels.
CLOCK	**CLOCK DISP***1 Clock display	• **CLOCK ON** : Clock time is shown on the display at all times when the power is turned off. • **CLOCK OFF** : Cancels; pressing DISP will show the clock time for about 5 seconds when the power is turned off, [7].
	CLOCK SET Clock setting	: Adjust the hour, then the minute, [7]. [Initial: 1:00]
	CLOCK ADJ*2 Clock adjustment	• **AUTO** : The built-in clock is automatically adjusted using the clock data provided via the satellite radio channel. • **OFF** : Cancels.
	TIME ZONE*2, *3 Time zone	: Select your residential area from one of the time zones for clock adjustment. **EASTERN, ATLANTIC, NEWFOUND, ALASKA, PACIFIC, MOUNTAIN, CENTRAL**
	DST*2, *3 Daylight savings time	• **DST ON** : Activates daylight savings time if your residential area is subject to DST. • **DST OFF** : Cancels.
EQ	**EQ** Equalizer	: Select a preset sound mode suitable to the music genre. **USER, ROCK, CLASSIC, POPS, HIP HOP, JAZZ**
DISPLAY	**DIMMER** Dimmer	• **DIMMER ON** : Dims the display and button illumination. • **DIMMER OFF** : Cancels.
	SCROLL*4 Scroll	• **SCROLL ONCE** : Scrolls the displayed information once. • **SCROLL AUTO** : Repeats scrolling (at 5-second intervals). • **SCROLL OFF** : Cancels. Pressing DISP for more than one second can scroll the display regardless of the setting.

*1 *If the power supply is not interrupted by turning off the ignition key of your car, it is recommended to select "*CLOCK OFF*" to save the car's battery.*

*2 *Displayed only when SIRIUS Satellite radio or XM Satellite radio is connected.*

*3 *Displayed only when "*CLOCK ADJ*" is set to "*AUTO.*"*

*4 *Some characters or symbols will not be shown correctly (or will be blanked) on the display.*

Continued on the next page

Category	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
DISPLAY	**TAG DISPLAY** Tag display	• **TAG ON** : Shows the Tag information while playing MP3/WMA tracks. • **TAG OFF** : Cancels.
TUNER	**AREA** Tuner channel interval	• **AREA US** : When using in North/Central/South America. AM/FM intervals are set to 10 kHz/200 kHz. • **AREA EU** : When using in any other areas. AM/FM intervals are set to 9 kHz/50 kHz (100 kHz during auto search). • **AREA SA** : When using in South American countries where FM interval is 100 kHz. AM interval is set to 10 kHz.
	MONO*5 Monaural mode	• **MONO ON** : Activate monaural mode to improve FM reception, but stereo effect will be lost, [8]. • **MONO OFF** : Restore the stereo effect.
	SID*6 SIRIUS ID	: Your SIRIUS identification number scrolls on the display 5 seconds after "SID" is selected, [16]. If no operation is done for about 30 seconds, the unit return to playback mode.
	BLEND HOLD*7 HD Radio reception mode	• **AUTO** : Switch between digital and analog audio automatically, [14]. • **DIGITAL** : Tuning to digital audio only. • **ANALOG** : Tuning to analog audio only.
	IF BAND Intermediate frequency band	• **AUTO** : Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) • **WIDE** : Subject to interference noises from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
COLOR	**COLOR 01 – COLOR 29, USER**	: Select one of the preset or user color for display and button (except **EQ**/⏻/ATT/⏏) illumination. (See also page 26 for USER color setting.)
MENU COLOR	**MENU COLOR** Menu color	• **OFF** : Cancels. • **ON** : Changes the display and button (except **EQ**/⏻/ATT/⏏) illumination during menu, list search and playback mode operations.
RING COLOR	**RING COLOR***8 Ring color	• **OFF** : Cancels. • **ON** : When a call comes in, the display will flash in blue. • The display will change to the original color when the call is answered or the incoming call stops. When the unit receive a text message, the display only illuminate in blue.

*5 *Displayed only when the source is "FM" or "HD Radio."*

*6 *Displayed only when SIRIUS Satellite radio is connected.*

*7 *Displayed only when HD Radio tuner box is connected.*

*8 *Displayed only when Bluetooth adapter, KS-BTA200 is connected.*

Category	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
AUDIO	**FADER***9 Fader	**R06 – F06** : Adjust the front and rear speaker output balance. [Initial: 00]
	BALANCE*10 Balance	**L06 – R06** : Adjust the left and right speaker output balance. [Initial: 00]
	LOUD Loudness	• **LOUD OFF** : Cancels. • **LOUD ON** : Boost low and high frequencies to produce a well-balanced sound at a low volume level.
	VOL ADJUST Volume adjust	**VOL ADJ –05 — VOL ADJ +05** [Initial: VOL ADJ 00] : Preset the volume adjustment level of each source (except FM), compared to the FM volume level. The volume level will automatically increase or decrease when you change the source. • Before making an adjustment, select the source you want to adjust. • "VOL ADJ FIX" appears on the display if "FM" is selected as the source.
	L/O MODE Line output mode	• **SUB.W** : Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting a subwoofer (through an external amplifier). • **REAR** : Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting the speakers (through an external amplifier).
	SUB.W FREQ*11 Subwoofer cutoff frequency	• **LOW** : Frequencies lower than 72 Hz are sent to the subwoofer. • **MID** : Frequencies lower than 111 Hz are sent to the subwoofer. • **HIGH** : Frequencies lower than 157 Hz are sent to the subwoofer.
	SUB.W LEVEL*11 Subwoofer level	**SUB.W 00 — SUB. W 08** : Adjust the subwoofer output level. [Initial: SUB.W 04]
	BEEP Keypress tone	• **BEEP OFF** : Deactivates the keypress tone. • **BEEP ON** : Activates the keypress tone.
	AMP GAIN*12 Amplifier gain control	• **LOW POWER** : VOLUME 00 – VOLUME 30 (Select if the maximum power of each speaker is less than 50 W to prevent damaging the speaker.) • **HIGH POWER** : VOLUME 00 – VOLUME 50

*9 *If you are using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to "00."*

*10 *This adjustment will not affect the subwoofer output.*

*11 *Displayed only when "*L/O MODE*" is set to "*SUB.W*."*

*12 *The volume level automatically changes to "VOLUME 30" if you change to "*LOW POWER*" with the volume level set higher than "VOLUME 30."*

Continued on the next page

Category	Menu items	Selectable setting, [reference page]
SRC SELECT	**AM***13 AM station	• **AM OFF** : Disable "AM" in source selection. • **AM ON** : Enable "AM" in source selection, [4].
	EXT IN*14,*15 External input	• **CH / IPOD** : To use a JVC CD changer, [15], or an Apple iPod, [18]. • **EXT INPUT** : To connect portable audio player to the CD changer jack, [19].
	AUX IN*16 Auxiliary input	• **AUX OFF** : Disable "AUX IN" in source selection. • **AUX ON** : Enable "AUX IN" in source selection, [4].

*13 *Displayed only when any source other than "AM" is selected.*

*14 *Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—FM, AM, CD, Bluetooth, HD Radio, or AUX IN.*

*15 *Not required for HD Radio broadcast/SIRIUS/XM tuners and Bluetooth.*

*16 *Displayed only when any source other than "AUX IN" is selected.*

Color settings

Creating your own color —USER Color

You can create your own colors—"DAY COLOR" or "NIGHT COLOR."

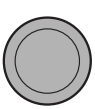
DAY COLOR: Used when "DIMMER" is set to "DIMMER OFF."

NIGHT COLOR: Used when "DIMMER" is set to "DIMMER ON."

1

[Hold]

2 **Select "COLOR" → "USER."**



[Turn] → [Press]

3 **While "USER" is shown on the display...**

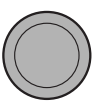
[Hold]

4

[Turn] → [Press]

DAY COLOR ↔ NIGHT COLOR

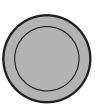
5 **Select a primary color.**



[Turn] → [Press]

RED ↔ GREEN ↔ BLUE

6 **Adjust the level (00 to 31) of the selected primary color.**



[Turn] → [Press]

7 **Repeat steps 5 and 6 to adjust other primary colors.**

8 **Exit from the setting.**

- If no operation is done for about 30 seconds, the operation will be canceled.

More about this unit

Basic operations

Turning on the power

- By pressing SRC button on the unit, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback also starts.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a track, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously next time you turn on the power.

General

- If you change the source while listening to a disc, playback stops.
  Next time you select "CD" as the playback source, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously.
- After ejecting a disc, "NO DISC" appears and you cannot operate some of the buttons. Insert another disc or press SRC to select another playback source.
- If no operation is done for about 30 seconds after pressing MENU button, the operation will be canceled.

Tuner operations

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
  – All previously stored stations are erased and the stations are stored anew.
  – When SSM is over, the station stored in the lowest preset number will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, the previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.

Disc operations

Caution for DualDisc playback

- The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

General

- This unit has been designed to reproduce CDs/CD Texts, and CD-Rs (Recordable)/CD-RWs (Rewritable) in audio CD (CD-DA), MP3 and WMA formats.
- When a disc is inserted upside down, "PLEASE" and "EJECT" appear alternately on the display. Press ⏏ to eject the disc.
- MP3 and WMA "tracks" (words "file" and "track" are used interchangeably) are recorded in "folders."
- While fast-forwarding or reversing on an MP3 or WMA disc, you can only hear intermittent sounds.

Playing a CD-R or CD-RW

- Use only "finalized" CD-Rs or CD-RWs.
- This unit can only play back files of the same type as those detected first if a disc includes both audio CD (CD-DA) files and MP3/WMA files.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some CD-Rs or CD-RWs may not play back on this unit because of their disc characteristics, or for the following reasons:
  – Discs are dirty or scratched.
  – Moisture condensation has occurred on the lens inside the unit.
  – The pickup lens inside the unit is dirty.
  – The files on the CD-R/CD-RW are written using the "Packet Write" method.
  – There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stained, scratched, warped, etc.).

Continued on the next page

- CD-RWs may require a longer readout time since the reflectance of CD-RWs is lower than that of regular CDs.
- Do not use the following CD-Rs or CD-RWs:
  – Discs with stickers, labels, or a protective seal stuck to the surface.
  – Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.

  Using these discs under high temperature or high humidity may cause malfunctions or damage to the unit.

Playing an MP3/WMA disc

- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files with the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3 files and for WMA files.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files meeting the conditions below:
  – Bit rate: 8 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency:
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG-1)
    24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG-2)
  – Disc format: ISO 9660 Level 1/Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name
- The maximum number of characters for file/folder names vary depending on the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3> or <.wma>).
  – ISO 9660 Level 1: up to 12 characters
  – ISO 9660 Level 2: up to 31 characters
  – Romeo: up to 128 characters
  – Joliet: up to 64 characters
  – Windows long file name: up to 128 characters
- This unit can recognize a total of 512 files, 255 folders, and 8 hierarchical levels.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).

  Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in the elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. In particular, this difference becomes noticeable after performing the search function.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded in MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded in an inappropriate format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded in lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, it is automatically inserted into the loading slot again to protect it from dust. Playback starts automatically.

Bluetooth operations

General

- While driving, do not perform complicated operation such as dialing the numbers, using phone book, etc. When you perform these operations, stop your car in a safe place.
- Some Bluetooth devices may not be connected to this unit depending on the Bluetooth version of the device.
- This unit may not work for some Bluetooth devices.
- Connecting condition may vary depending on the circumstances around you.
- When the unit is turned off, the device is disconnected.

Warning messages for Bluetooth operations

- **ERROR CNNCT** (Error Connection):
  The device is registered but the connection has failed. Use "CONNECT" to connect the device again. (See page 12.)

- **ERROR**
  Try the operation again. If "ERROR" appears again, check if the device supports the function you have tried.
- **UNFOUND**
  No available Bluetooth device is detected by "SEARCH."
- **LOADING**
  The unit is updating the phone book*.
  * *Displays only when your cellular phone is equipped with these functions and is compatible with this unit.*
- **PLEASE WAIT**
  The unit is preparing to use the Bluetooth function. If the message does not disappear, turn off and turn on the unit, then connect the device again (or reset the unit).
- **RESET 8**
  Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

Satellite radio

- To know more about SIRIUS Satellite radio or to sign up, visit <http://www.sirius.com>.
- For the latest channel listings and programming information, or to sign up for XM Satellite radio, visit <http://www.xmradio.com>.

iPod

- You can control the following types of iPods through the interface adapter.
  – iPod with dock connector (3rd Generation)
  – iPod with Click Wheel (4th Generation)
  – iPod mini
  – iPod photo
  – iPod nano*1
  – iPod video (5th Generation)*2
  – iPod classic 2007*2
  – iPod nano (3rd Generation)*2
  *1 *When you connect the iPod nano to the interface adapter, be sure to disconnect the headphones; otherwise, no sound is heard.*
  *2 *It is not possible to browse video files on the "Videos" menu.*
- If the iPod does not play correctly, please update your iPod software to the latest version. For details about updating your iPod, visit <http://www.apple.com>.
- When you turn on this unit, the iPod is charged through this unit.
- While the iPod is connected, all operations from the iPod are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
- If the text information includes more than 11 characters, it scrolls on the display. This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:
When operating an iPod, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/> (English website only)

Title assignment

- If you try to assign titles to more than 30 station frequencies, "NAME FULL" appears. Delete unwanted titles before assignment.

Menu operations

- If you change the "AMP GAIN" setting from "HIGH POWER" to "LOW POWER" while the volume level is set higher than "VOLUME 30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "VOLUME 30."

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).
	• "AUX" cannot be selected.	Check the "SRC SELECT" → "AUX IN" setting (see page 26).
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually.
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the antenna firmly.
	• "AM" cannot be selected.	Check the "SRC SELECT" → "AM" setting (see page 26).
Disc playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played back. • Tracks on the CD-R/CD-RW cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized CD-R/CD-RW. • Finalize the CD-R/CD-RW with the component which you used for recording.
	• Disc can neither be played back nor ejected.	• Unlock the disc (see page 9). • Eject the disc forcibly (see page 3).
	• Disc sound is sometimes interrupted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc. • Check the cords and connections.
	• "NO DISC" appears on the display.	Insert a playable disc into the loading slot.
	• "PLEASE" and "EJECT" appear alternately on the display.	Press ⏏, then insert a disc correctly.
MP3/WMA playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Use a disc with MP3/WMA tracks recorded in a format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, Level 2, Romeo, or Joliet. • Add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to the file names.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
MP3/WMA playback	• Noise is generated.	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3 or WMA tracks.)
	• A longer readout time is required ("READING" keeps flashing on the display).	Do not use too many hierarchical levels and folders.
	• Tracks do not play back in the order you have intended them to play.	The playback order is determined when the files are recorded.
	• The elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc.
	• The correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (upper case), numbers, and a limited number of symbols.
Bluetooth*	• Bluetooth device does not detect the unit.	The unit can be connected with one Bluetooth cellular phone and one Bluetooth audio device at a time. While connecting a device, this unit cannot be detected from another device. Disconnect currently connected device and search again.
	• The unit does not detect the Bluetooth device.	• Check the Bluetooth setting of the device. • Search from the Bluetooth device. After the device detects the unit, select "OPEN" on the unit to connect the device. (See page 11.)
	• The unit does not make pairing with the Bluetooth device.	• Enter the same PIN code for both the unit and target device. • Select the device name from "SPECIAL," then try to connect again. (See page 11.) • Try to pair/connect from the Bluetooth device.
	• Echo or noise occurs.	Adjust the microphone unit position.
	• Phone sound quality is poor.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth cellular phone. • Move the car to a place where you can get a better signal reception.

* *For Bluetooth operations, refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth Adapter.*

Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Bluetooth	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a Bluetooth audio device.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth audio device. • Disconnect the device connected for "BT-PHONE." • Turn off, then turn on the unit. • (When the sound is not yet restored,) connect the device again.
	• The connected audio device cannot be controlled.	Check whether the connected audio device supports AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile).
HD Radio reception	• Sound quality changes when receiving HD Radio stations.	Fix the reception mode either to "DIGITAL" or "ANALOG" (see pages 14 and 24).
	• No sound can be heard.	• "ANALOG" is selected when receiving all digital broadcast of HD Radio station. Select "DIGITAL" or "AUTO" (see pages 14 and 24). • "DIGITAL" is selected when receiving weak digital signals or receiving conventional radio broadcast. Select "ANALOG" or "AUTO" (see pages 14 and 24).
	• "RESET 8" appears on the display.	Reconnect this unit and the HD Radio tuner box correctly, then reset the unit.
CD changer	• "NO DISC" appears on the display.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "NO MAGAZINE" appears on the display.	Insert the magazine.
	• "RESET 8" appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "RESET 1" – "RESET 7" appears on the display.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Satellite radio	• "CALL 1-888-539-SIRIUS TO SUBSCRIBE" scrolls on the display while listening to the SIRIUS Satellite radio.	Starts subscribing to SIRIUS Satellite radio (see page 16).
	• No sound can be heard. "UPDATING" appears on the display.	The unit is updating the channel information and it takes a few minutes to complete.
	• "NO SIGNAL" appears on the display.	Move to an area where signals are stronger.
	• "NO ANTENNA" or "ANTENNA"appears on the display.	Connect the antenna firmly.
	• "NO CHANNEL" appears on the display for about 5 seconds, then returns to the previous display while listening to the SIRIUS Satellite radio.	No broadcast on the selected channel. Select another channel or continue listening to the previous channel.
	• "NO (information)*" scrolls on the display while listening to the SIRIUS Satellite radio. • "---" appears on the display while listening to the XM Satellite radio.	No text information for the selected channel.
	• "---" appears on the display for about 2 seconds, then returns to the previous channel while listening to the XM Satellite radio.	Selected channel is no longer available or is unauthorized. Select another channel or continue listening to the previous channel.
	• "OFF AIR" appears on the display while listening to the XM Satellite radio.	Selected channel is not broadcasting at this time. Select another channel or continue listening to the previous channel.
	• "LOADING" appears on the display while listening to the XM Satellite radio.	The unit is loading the channel information and audio. Text information are temporarily unavailable.
	• "RESET 8" appears on the display. • Satellite radio does not work at all.	Reconnect this unit and the satellite radio correctly and reset this unit.

* *NO CATEGORY, NO ARTIST, NO COMPOSER, and NO SONG/PROGRAM.*

Continued on the next page

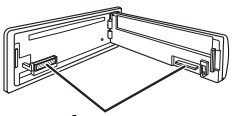
	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
iPod	• The iPod does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Update the firmware version. • Charge the battery.
	• The sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod.
	• "NO IPOD" appears on the display.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Charge the battery.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart the playback operation (see page 18).
	• No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano.	• Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano. • Update the firmware version of the iPod nano.
	• "NO FILES" appears on the display.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod.
	• "RESET 1" – "RESET 7" appears on the display.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod. Then, connect it again.
	• "RESET 8" appears on the display.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod.

- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Victor Company of Japan, Limited (JVC) is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- HD Radio™ and the HD Radio Ready logo are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.
- "SIRIUS" and the SIRIUS dog logo are registered trademarks of SIRIUS Satellite Radio Inc.
- XM and its corresponding logos are registered trademarks of XM Satellite Radio Inc.
- "SAT Radio," the SAT Radio logo and all related marks are trademarks of SIRIUS Satellite Radio Inc., and XM Satellite Radio, Inc.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors. To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connectors

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the unit in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the unit may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture has evaporated.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc in its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs in cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly. If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvents (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.

To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:

Single CD —8 cm (3-3/16") disc

Warped disc

Sticker and sticker residue

Stick-on label

Unusual shape

C-thru Disc (semi-transparent disc)

Transparent or semi-transparent parts on its recording area

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION		
Power Output:	**20 W RMS × 4 Channels at 4 Ω and ≤ 1% THD+N**	
Signal-to-Noise Ratio:	80 dBA (reference: 1 W into 4 Ω)	
Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
Tone Control Range:	Bass:	±12 dB (60 Hz, 80 Hz, 100 Hz, 120 Hz) Q0.5, Q1.0, Q1.5, Q2.0
	Middle:	±12 dB (500 Hz, 1.0 kHz, 1.5 kHz, 2.5 kHz) Q0.75, Q1.0, Q1.25, Q1.5
	Treble:	±12 dB (7.5 kHz, 10.0 kHz, 12.5 kHz, 15.0 kHz) Q0.75, Q1.25
Frequency Response:		40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
Line-Out Level/Impedance:	KD-A305:	5.0 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
	KD-R300:	2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
Subwoofer-Out Level/Impedance:	KD-A305:	5.0 V /20 kΩ load (full scale)
	KD-R300:	2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
Output Impedance:		1 kΩ
Other Terminal:		AUX (auxiliary) input jack, CD changer jack, Steering wheel remote input (only for KD-A305), Antenna input

TUNER SECTION			
Frequency Range:	FM:	with channel interval set to 100 kHz or 200 kHz	87.5 MHz to 107.9 MHz
		with channel interval set to 50 kHz	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
	AM:	with channel interval set to 10 kHz	530 kHz to 1 710 kHz
		with channel interval set to 9 kHz	531 kHz to 1 602 kHz
FM Tuner	Usable Sensitivity:		11.3 dBf (1.0 µV/75 Ω)
	50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:		16.3 dBf (1.8 µV/75 Ω)
	Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):		65 dB
	Frequency Response:		40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
	Stereo Separation:		35 dB
AM Tuner	Sensitivity:		20 µV
	Selectivity:		35 dB

CD PLAYER SECTION	
Type:	Compact disc player
Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)
Number of Channels:	2 channels (stereo)
Frequency Response:	5 Hz to 20 000 Hz
Dynamic Range:	96 dB
Signal-to-Noise Ratio:	98 dB
Wow and Flutter:	Less than measurable limit
MP3 Decoding Format: (MPEG1/2 Audio Layer 3)	Max. Bit Rate: 320 kbps
WMA (Windows Media® Audio) Decoding Format:	Max. Bit Rate: 192 kbps

GENERAL		
Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
Grounding System:		Negative ground
Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C (32°F to 104°F)
Dimensions (W × H × D): (approx.)	Installation Size:	182 mm × 52 mm × 160 mm (7-3/16″ × 2-1/16″ × 6-5/16″)
	Panel Size:	188 mm × 58 mm × 6 mm (7-7/16″ × 2-5/16″ × 1/4″)
Mass:		1.3 kg (2.9 lbs) (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

If a kit is necessary for your car, consult your telephone directory for the nearest car audio speciality shop.

Having TROUBLE with operation?
Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

Still having trouble??

USA ONLY

Call 1-800-252-5722

http://www.jvc.com

We can help you!

JVC

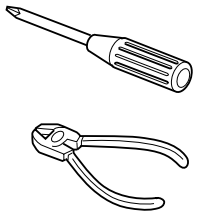
EN, SP, FR

© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0808DTSMDTJEIN

KD-A305/KD-R300

Installation/Connection Manual
Manual de instalación/conexión
Manuel d'installation/raccordement



GET0570-002A
[J]

0808DTSMDTJEIN
EN, SP, FR
© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

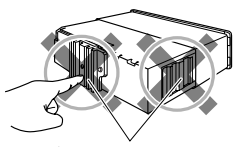
WARNINGS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with a maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "AMP GAIN" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 25 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



Heat sink / Sumidero térmico / *Dissipateur de chaleur*

ESPAÑOL

Esta unidad está diseñada para funcionar con **12 V de CC, con sistemas eléctricos de masa NEGATIVA**. Si su vehículo no posee este sistema, será necesario un inversor de tensión, que puede ser adquirido en los concesionarios de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles.

ADVERTENCIAS

Para evitar cortocircuitos, recomendamos que desconecte el terminal negativo de la batería y que efectúe todas las conexiones eléctricas antes de instalar la unidad.

- **Asegúrese de volver a conectar a masa esta unidad al chasis del automóvil después de la instalación.**

Notas:

- Reemplace el fusible por uno con la corriente especificada. Si el fusible se quemase frecuentemente consulte con su concesionario de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles.
- Se recomienda conectar altavoces que tengan una potencia máxima de más de 50 W (tanto en las partes delantera como trasera, con una impedancia de **4 Ω á 8 Ω**). Si la potencia máxima es de menos de 50 W, cambie "AMP GAIN" para evitar daños en los altavoces (consulte la página 25 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES).
- Para evitar cortocircuitos, cubra los terminales de los conductores NO UTILIZADOS con cinta aislante.
- El sumidero térmico estará muy caliente después del uso. Asegúrese de no tocarlo al desmontar esta unidad.

FRANÇAIS

Cet appareil est conçu pour fonctionner sur des sources de **courant continu de 12 V à masse NEGATIVE**. *Si votre véhicule n'offre pas ce type d'alimentation, il vous faut un convertisseur de tension, que vous pouvez acheter chez un revendeur d'autoradios JVC.*

AVERTISSEMENTS

Pour éviter tout court-circuit, nous vous recommandons de débrancher la borne négative de la batterie et d'effectuer tous les raccordements électriques avant d'installer l'appareil.

- **Assurez-vous de raccorder de nouveau la mise à la masse de cet appareil au châssis de la voiture après l'installation.**

Remarques:

- *Remplacer le fusible par un de la valeur précisée. Si le fusible saute souvent, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC.*
- *Il est recommandé de connecter des enceintes avec une puissance maximum de plus de 50 W (à l'arrière et à l'avant et avec une impédance de* **4 Ω à 8 Ω**). *Si la puissance maximum est inférieure à 50 W, changez "AMP GAIN" pour éviter d'endommager vos enceintes (voir page 25 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).*
- *Pour éviter les courts-circuits, recouvrez les extrémités des fils INUTILISÉS avec une bande isolante.*
- *Le dissipateur de chaleur devient très chaud après usage. Faire attention de ne pas le toucher en retirant cet appareil.*

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

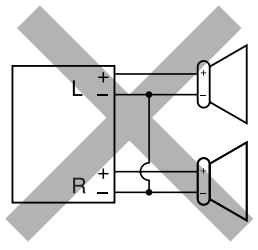
- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

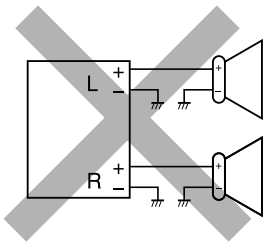
PRECAUCIONES sobre las conexiones de la fuente de alimentación y de los altavoces:

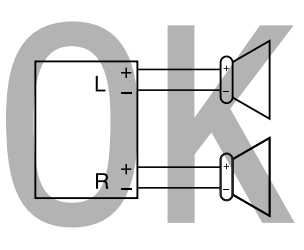
- **NO conecte los conductores de altavoz del cable de alimentación a la batería de automóvil, pues podrían producirse graves daños en la unidad.**
- ANTES de conectar a los altavoces los conductores de altavoz del cable de alimentación, verifique el conexionado de altavoz de su automóvil.

PRECAUTIONS sur l'alimentation et la connexion des enceintes:

- **NE CONNECTEZ PAS les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation à la batterie; sinon, l'appareil serait sérieusement endommagé.**
- *AVANT de connecter les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation aux enceintes, vérifiez le câblage des enceintes de votre voiture.*



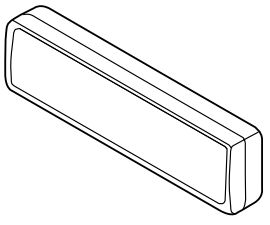




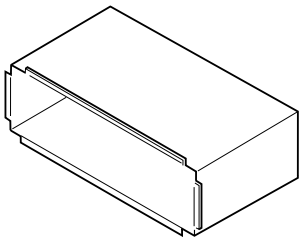
Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this unit. If any item is missing, consult your JVC car audio dealer immediately.

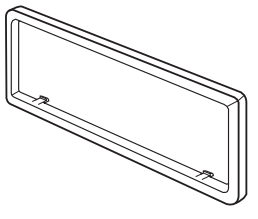
Ⓐ
Control panel
Panel de control
Panneau de commande



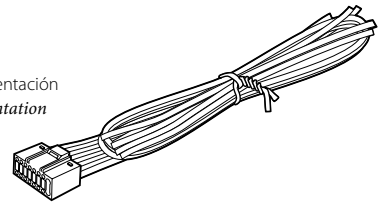
Ⓑ
Sleeve
Cubierta
Manchon



Ⓒ
Trim plate
Placa de guarnición
Plaque d'assemblage



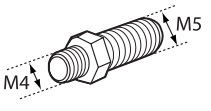
Ⓓ
Power cord
Cordón de alimentación
Cordon d'alimentation



Ⓔ
Washer (ø5)
Arandela (ø5)
Rondelle (ø5)

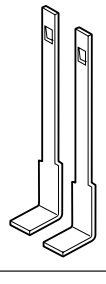
Ⓕ
Lock nut (M5)
Tuerca de seguridad (M5)
Ecrou d'arrêt (M5)

Ⓖ
Mounting bolt—M4 × 5 mm (M4 × 1/4"); M5 × 12.5 mm (M5 × 1/2")
Perno de montaje—M4 × 5 mm (M4 × 1/4 pulgada); M5 × 12,5 mm (M5 × 1/2 pulgada)
Boulon de montage—M4 × 5 mm (M4 × 1/4 pouces); M5 × 12,5 mm (M5 × 1/2 pouces)

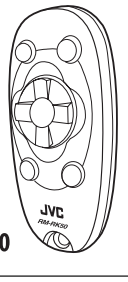


Ⓗ
Rubber cushion
Cojín de goma
Amortisseur en caoutchouc

Ⓘ
Handles
Manijas
Poignées



Ⓙ
Remote controller
Control remoto
Télécommande



RM-RK50

Ⓚ
Battery
Pila
Pile

CR2025

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

INSTALACION (MONTAJE EN EL TABLERO DE INSTRUMENTOS)

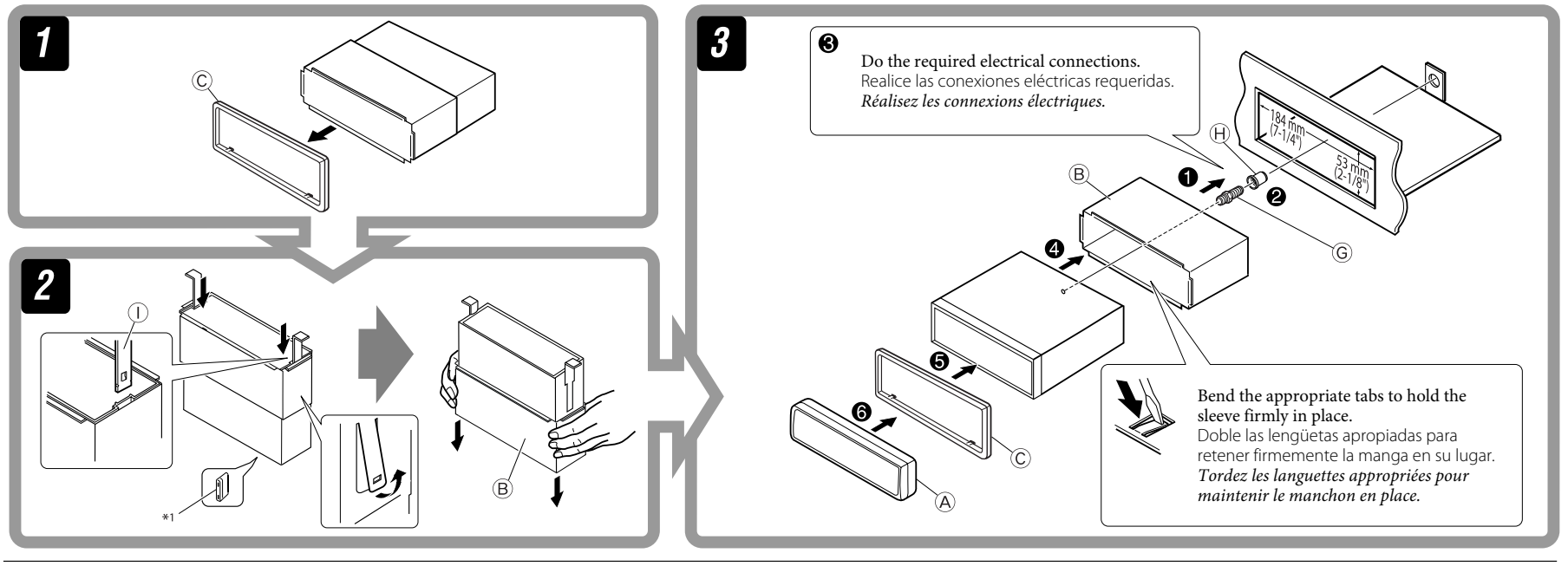
La siguiente ilustración muestra una instalación típica. Si tiene alguna pregunta o necesita información acerca de las herramientas para instalación, consulte con su concesionario de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles o a una compañía que suministra tales herramientas.

- Si usted no está seguro de cómo instalar correctamente la unidad, hágala instalar por un técnico cualificado.

INSTALLATION (MONTAGE DANS LE TABLEAU DE BORD)

L'illustration suivante est un exemple d'installation typique. Si vous avez des questions ou avez besoin d'information sur des kits d'installation, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC ou une compagnie d'approvisionnement.

- *Si l'on n'est pas sûr de pouvoir installer correctement cet appareil, le faire installer par un technicien qualifié.*



Removing the unit

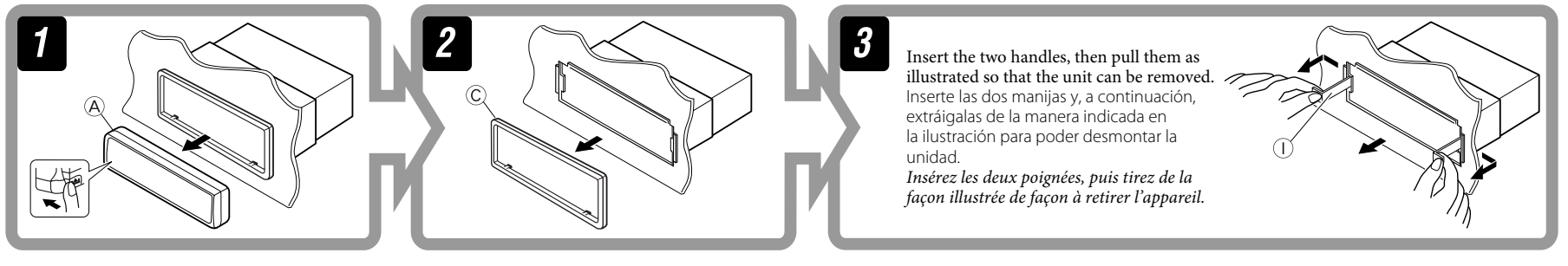
Before removing the unit, release the rear section.

Extracción de la unidad

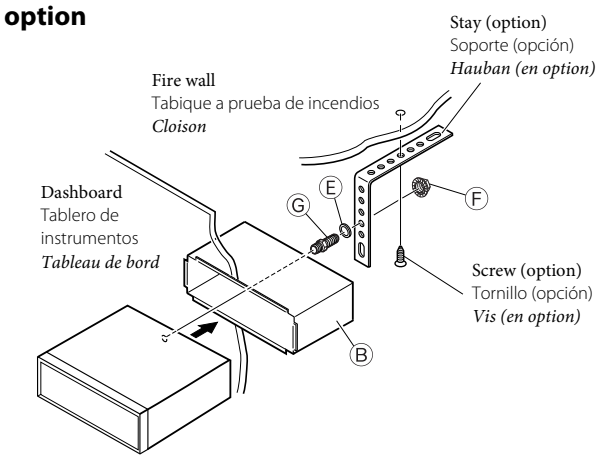
Antes de extraer la unidad, libere la sección trasera.

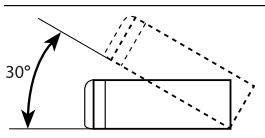
Retrait de l'appareil

Avant de retirer l'appareil, libérer la section arrière.



When using the optional stay / Cuando emplea un soporte opcional / Lors de l'utilisation du hauban en option

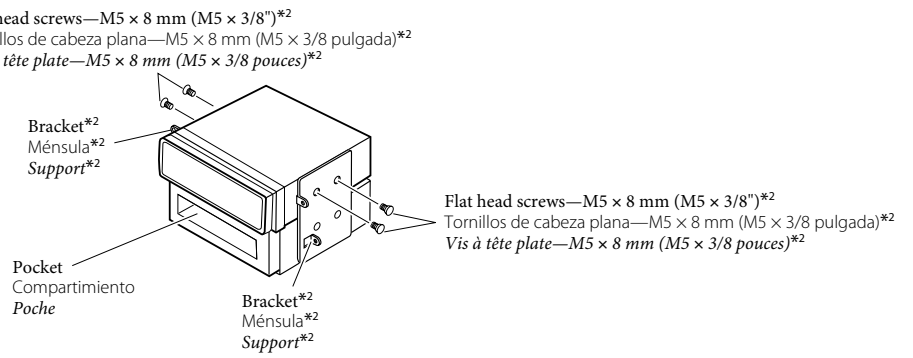




Install the unit at an angle of less than 30°.
Instale la unidad a un ángulo de menos de 30°.
Installez l'appareil avec un angle de moins de 30°.

When installing the unit without using the sleeve / Instalación de la unidad sin utilizar la cubierta / Lors de l'installation de l'appareil scans utiliser de manchon

In a Toyota car for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place.
En un automóvil Toyota, por ejemplo, en primer lugar desmonte el autorradio e instale la unidad en su lugar.
Dans une voiture Toyota, par exemple, retirez d'abord l'autoradio et installez l'appareil à sa place.



Note : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm (3/8") -long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

Nota : Cuando instala la unidad en la ménsula de montaje, asegúrese de utilizar los tornillos de 8 mm (3/8 pulgada) de longitud. Si se utilizan tornillos más largos, éstos pueden dañar la unidad.

Remarque : *Lors de l'installation de l'appareil sur le support de montage, s'assurer d'utiliser des vis d'une longueur de 8 mm (3/8 pouces). Si des vis plus longues sont utilisées, elles peuvent endommager l'appareil.*

*1 When you stand the unit, be careful not to damage the fuse on the rear.
*2 Not supplied for this unit.

*1 Al poner la unidad vertical, tenga cuidado de no dañar el fusible provisto en la parte posterior.
*2 No suministrado con esta unidad.

*1 *Lorsque vous mettez l'appareil à la verticale, faire attention de ne pas endommager le fusible situé sur l'arrière.*
*2 *Non fourni avec cet appareil.*

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.**
* Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.**
* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **This unit becomes hot.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **This unit does not work at all.**
* Have you reset your unit?

LOCALIZACION DE AVERIAS

- **El fusible se quema.**
* ¿Están los conductores rojo y negro correctamente conectados?
- **No es posible conectar la alimentación.**
* ¿Está el cable amarillo conectado?
- **No sale sonido de los altavoces.**
* ¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz cortocircuitado?
- **El sonido presenta distorsión.**
* ¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz conectado a masa?
* ¿Están los terminales "–" de los altavoces L y R conectados a una masa común?
- **Perturbación de ruido.**
* ¿El terminal de tierra trasero está conectado al chasis del automóvil utilizando los cordones más corto y más grueso?
- **Esta unidad se calienta.**
* ¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz conectado a masa?
* ¿Están los terminales "–" de los altavoces L y R conectados a una masa común?
- **Esta unidad no funciona en absoluto.**
* ¿Reinicializó la unidad?

EN CAS DE DIFFICULTES

- **Le fusible saute.**
* *Les fils rouge et noir sont-ils racordés correctement?*
- **L'appareil ne peut pas être mise sous tension.**
* *Le fil jaune est-elle raccordée?*
- **Pas de son des enceintes.**
* *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il court-circuité?*
- **Le son est déformé.**
* *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?*
* *Les bornes "–" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?*
- **Interférence avec les sons.**
* *La prise arrière de mise à la terre est-elle connectée au châssis de la voiture avec un cordon court et épais?*
- **Cet appareil devient chaud.**
* *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?*
* *Les bornes "–" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?*
- **Cet appareil ne fonctionne pas du tout.**
* *Avez-vous réinitialisé votre appareil?*

ENGLISH

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

ESPAÑOL

CONEXIONES ELECTRICAS

FRANÇAIS

RACCORDEMENTS ELECTRIQUES

A Typical connections / Conexiones tipicas / Raccordements typiques

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

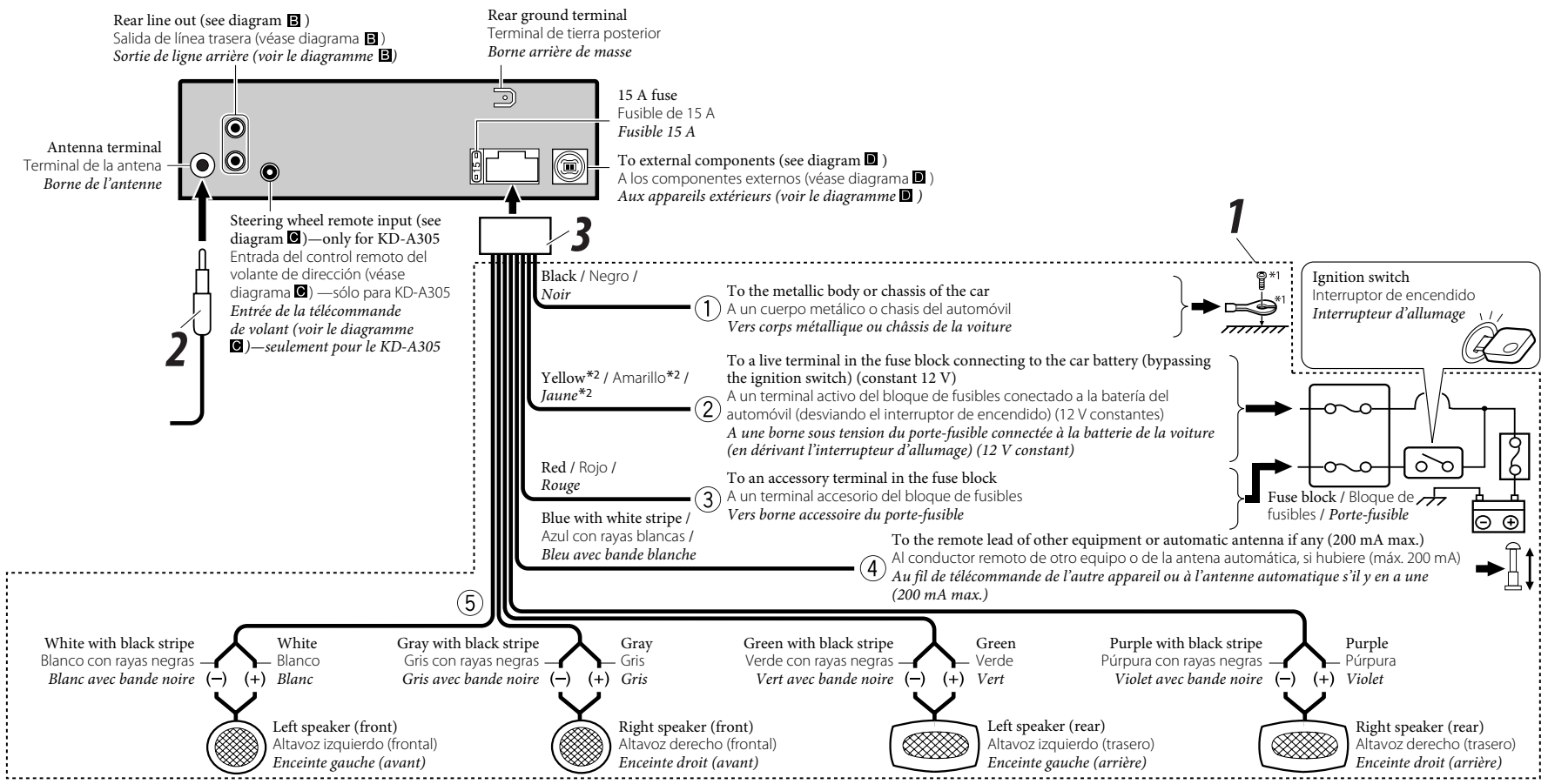
1. Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
2. Connect the antenna cord.
3. Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

Antes de la conexión: Verifique atentamente el conexionado del vehículo. Una conexión incorrecta podría producir daños graves en la unidad.
Los cordones del cable de alimentación y los del conector procedentes de la carrocería del automóvil podrían ser de diferentes en color.

1. Conecte los conductores de color del cable de alimentación en el orden especificado en la ilustración de abajo.
2. Conecte el cable de antena.
3. Por último, conecte el cable de alimentación a la unidad.

Avant de commencer la connexion: *Vérifiez attentivement le câblage du véhicule. Une connexion incorrecte peut endommager sérieusement l'appareil.*
Le fil du cordon d'alimentation et ceux des connecteurs du châssis de la voiture peuvent être différents en couleur.

1. *Connectez les fils colorés du cordon d'alimentation dans l'ordre spécifié sur l'illustration ci-dessous.*
2. *Connectez le cordon d'antenne.*
3. *Finalement, connectez le faisceau de fils à l'appareil.*

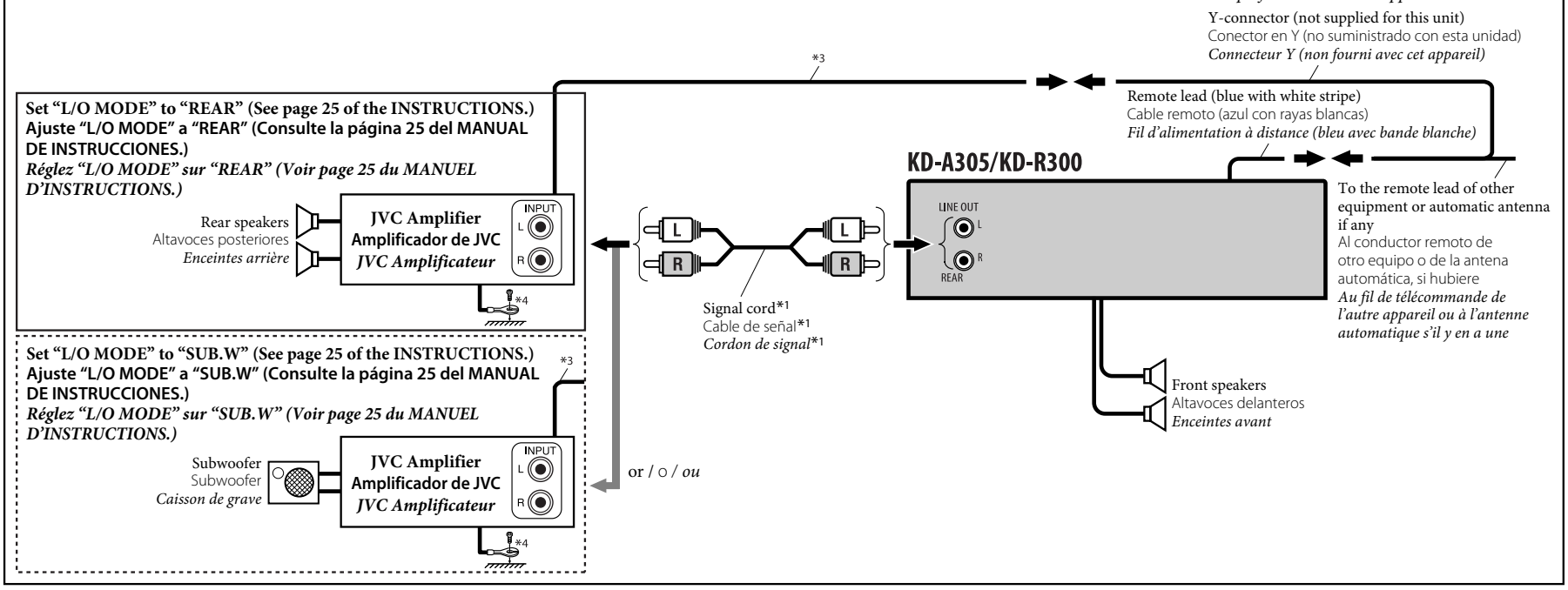


B Connecting the external amplifier or subwoofer / Conexión de los amplificadores o subwoofer externos / Connexion d'amplificateurs extérieurs ou d'un caisson de grave

You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.
- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **For amplifier only:**
  - **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**
  - For KD-A305: The line output level of this unit is kept high to maintain the hi-fi sounds reproduced from this unit. When connecting an external amplifier to this unit, turn down the gain control on the external amplifier to obtain the best performance from this unit.

Usted podrá conectar un amplificador para mejorar el sistema estéreo de su automóvil.
- Conecte el conductor remoto (azul con rayas blancas) al conductor remoto del otro equipo para poderlo controlar a través de esta unidad.
- **Sólo para el amplificador:**
  - **Desconecte los altavoces de esta unidad y conéctelos al amplificador. Los cables de los altavoces de esta unidad quedan sin usar.**
  - Para KD-A305: El nivel de salida de línea de esta unidad permanece alto para que corresponda con los sonidos de alta fidelidad reproducidos por esta unidad. Cuando conecte un amplificador externo a esta unidad, disminuya el control de ganancia del amplificador externo para obtener un óptimo rendimiento de esta unidad.

Vous pouvez connecter un amplificateur pour améliorer votre système autoradio.
- *Connectez le fil de commande à distance (bleu avec bande blanche) au fil de commande à distance de l'autre appareil de façon qu'il puisse être commandé via cet appareil.*
- **Pour l'amplificateur seulement:**
  - **Déconnectez les enceintes de cet appareil et connectez-les à l'amplificateur. Laissez les fils d'enceintes de cet appareil inutilisés.**
  - *Pour le KD-A305: Le niveau de sortie de ligne de cet appareil est maintenu à un niveau élevé pour maintenir une qualité Hi-Fi pour les sons reproduits par cet appareil. Lors de la connexion d'un amplificateur extérieur à cet appareil, diminuez le réglage du gain sur l'amplificateur extérieur pour obtenir les meilleures performances de cet appareil.*



*1 Not supplied for this unit.
*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected; otherwise, the power cannot be turned on.
*3 Remote lead
*4 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.

*1 No suministrado con esta unidad.
*2 Antes de comprobar el funcionamiento de esta unidad previa a de la instalación, es necesario conectar este cable, de lo contrario no se podrá conectar la alimentación.
*3 Cable remoto
*4 Fije firmemente el cable de tierra a la carrocería metálica o al chasis—a un lugar no cubierto con pintura (si está cubierto con pintura, quítela antes de fijar el cable). De lo contrario, se podrían producir daños en la unidad.

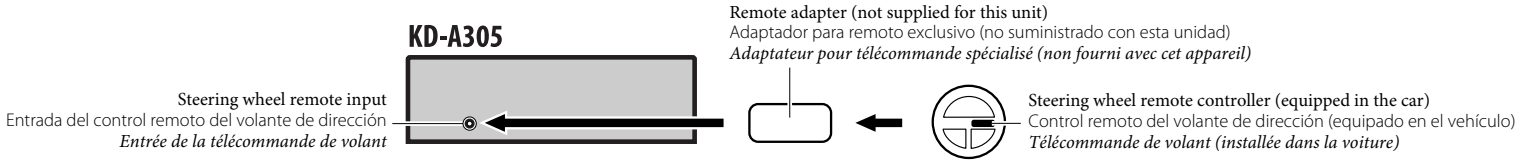
*1 *Non fourni avec cet appareil.*
*2 *Pour vérifier le fonctionnement de cet appareil avant installation, ce fil doit être raccordé, sinon l'appareil ne peut pas être mis sous tension.*
*3 *Fil d'alimentation à distance*
*4 *Attachez solidement le fil de mise à la masse au châssis métallique de la voiture—à un endroit qui n'est pas recouvert de peinture (s'il est recouvert de peinture, enlevez d'abord la peinture avant d'attacher le fil). L'appareil peut être endommagé si cela n'est pas fait correctement.*

C Connecting to the steering wheel remote controller (only for KD-A305) / Conexión al control remoto del volante de dirección (sólo para KD-A305) / Connexion de la télécommande de volant (seulement pour le KD-A305)

If your car is equipped with the steering wheel remote controller, you can operate this unit using the controller. For connection, an exclusive remote adapter (not supplied) which matches your car is required. For details, consult the same car audio dealer as where the unit is purchased.

Si su automóvil está equipado con control remoto en el volante de dirección, podrá controlar este receptor utilizando el control remoto. Para la conexión, se requiere un adaptador remoto exclusivo (no suministrado) que sea adecuado para su automóvil. Para los detalles, consulte con el concesionario car audio donde compró el receptor.

Si votre voiture est équipée d'une télécommande de volant, vous pouvez commander cet autoradio en utilisant cette télécommande. Pour la connexion, vous avez besoin d'un adaptateur de télécommande spécialisé (non fourni) correspondant à votre voiture. Pour en savoir plus, consultez le revendeur autoradio où vous avez acheté votre autoradio.



D Connecting the external components / Conexión de los componentes externos / Connexion des appareils extérieurs

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapter.

CAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.
HD Radio™ tuner box	KT-HD300

You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters or system.
- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter/System	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod	KS-PD100
XMDirect™ Tuner Box	Smart Digital Adapter	XMDJVC100
XMDirect2 Tuner System	XM satellite radio System	CNP2000UC and CNPJVC1
SIRIUS satellite radio	SIRIUS satellite radio System	SC-C1 and KS-SRA100
SIRIUS satellite radio	SIRIUS satellite radio System	PnP, SC-VDOC1 and KS-SRA100
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm (3/16") stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter	KS-U58

When connecting more than one component (maximum: three), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.
- XM Radio and SIRIUS satellite radio cannot be used together.

Cuando conecte componentes externos, consulte, también, los manuales suministrados con los componentes y el adaptador.

PRECAUCION:
Antes de conectar los componentes externos, asegúrese de que la unidad esté apagada.

Puede conectar los siguientes componentes JVC al jack del cambiador de CD.

Componente JVC	Nombre del modelo
Cambiador de CD (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.
Sintonizador HD Radio™	KT-HD300

También puede conectar los siguientes componentes a través de los diversos adaptadores o sistema JVC.
- Puede ser necesario comprar los cables de conexión por separado.

Componente	Adaptador/Sistema	Nombre del modelo
Dispositivo Bluetooth	Adaptador Bluetooth	KS-BTA200
iPod	Adaptador de interfaz para iPod	KS-PD100
XMDirect™ Tuner Box	Adaptador digital inteligente	XMDJVC100
Sistema de sintonizador XMDirect2	Sistema de radio XM Satellite	CNP2000UC y CNPJVC1
Radio por satélite SIRIUS	Sistema de radio satelital SIRIUS	SC-C1 y KS-SRA100
Radio por satélite SIRIUS	Sistema de radio satelital SIRIUS	PnP, SC-VDOC1 y KS-SRA100
Reproductor de audio portátil con jacks de salida de línea	Adaptador de entrada por línea	KS-U57
Reproductor de audio portátil con jack mini estéreo de 3,5 mm (3/16 pulgada)	Adaptador de entrada AUX	KS-U58

Cuando conecte más de un componente (máximo: tres), se recomienda que conecte los componentes en serie, como se explica a continuación.
- No puede utilizar juntas la radio XM y la radio satelital SIRIUS.

Lors de la connexion des appareils extérieurs, référez-vous aussi aux manuels fournis avec les appareils et les adaptateurs.

PRECAUTION:
Avant de connecter les appareils extérieurs, assurez-vous que l'appareil est hors tension.

Vous pouvez connecter les appareils JVC suivants à la prise de changeur de CD.

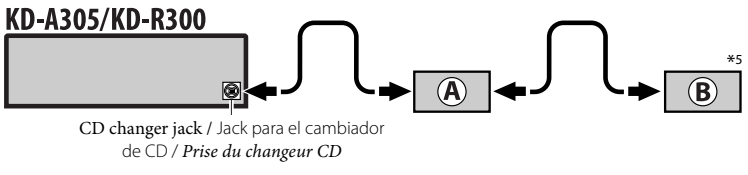
Appareil JVC	Nom du modèle
Changeur de CD (CD-CH)	*CH-X1500, etc.*
Tuner HD Radio™	*KT-HD300*

Vous pouvez aussi connecter les appareils suivants en utilisant divers adaptateurs JVC ou systèmes.
- *Vous pouvez avoir besoin d'acheter certains cordons de connexion séparément.*

Appareil	Adaptateur/ Système	Nom du modèle
Périphérique Bluetooth	*Adaptateur Bluetooth*	*KS-BTA200*
iPod	*Adaptateur d'interface pour iPod*	*KS-PD100*
XMDirect™ Tuner Box	*Adaptateur numérique intelligent*	*XMDJVC100*
XMDirect2 Tuner System	*Système radio satellite XM*	*CNP2000UC et CNPJVC1*
Radio satellite SIRIUS	*Système radio satellite SIRIUS*	*SC-C1 et KS-SRA100*
Radio satellite SIRIUS	*Système radio satellite SIRIUS*	*PnP, SC-VDOC1 et KS-SRA100*
Lecteur audio portable avec prises de sortie de ligne	*Adaptateur d'entrée de ligne*	*KS-U57*
Lecteur audio portable avec mini fiche stéréo de 3,5 mm (3/16 pouces)	*Adaptateur d'entrée auxiliaire*	*KS-U58*

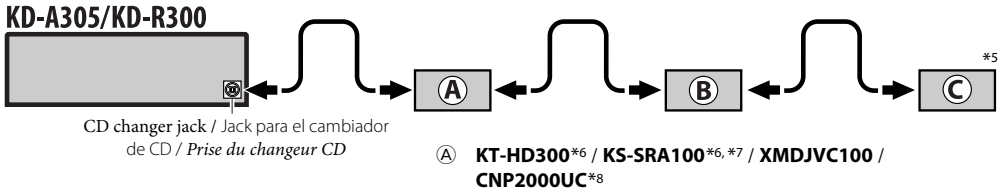
Lors de la connexion de plus d'un appareil (maximum: trois), il est recommandé que vous connectiez les appareils en série comme nous l'expliquons ci-dessous.
- *La radio XM et SIRIUS ne peuvent pas être utilisées en même temps.*

When connecting two components in series / Cuando conecta dos componentes en serie / Lors de la connexion de deux appareils en série



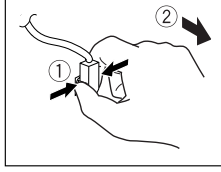
Ⓐ **KT-HD300***6 / **KS-SRA100***6, *7 / **KS-BTA200** / **XMDJVC100** / **CNP2000UC***8
Ⓑ*5 **CD-CH** / **KS-PD100** / **KS-U57** / **KS-U58**

When connecting three components in series / Cuando conecta tres componentes en serie / Lors de la connexion de trois appareils en série



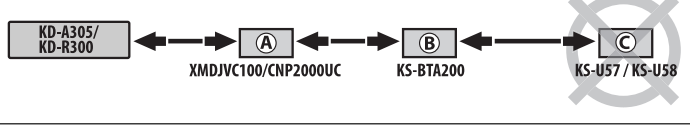
Ⓐ **KT-HD300***6 / **KS-SRA100***6, *7 / **XMDJVC100** / **CNP2000UC***8
Ⓑ **KS-BTA200**
Ⓒ*5 **KS-PD100** / **KS-U57** / **KS-U58**

To disconnect the connector / Para desconectar el cable / ***Pour déconnecter le connecteur***



Hold the connector top tightly (①), then pull it out (②).
Sujete firmemente la parte superior del conector (①) y seguidamente, extráigalo (②).
Tenez fermement le connecteur par-dessus (①) et tirez vers l'extérieur (②).

It is not recommended to connect KS-U57/KS-U58 at Ⓒ in series with XMDJVC100, CNP2000UC and KS-BTA200.
No se recomienda conectar el KS-U57/KSU58 en C, en serie con XMDJVC100, CNP2000UC y KS-BTA200.
Il n'est pas recommandé de connecter le KS-U57/KS-U58 en série à C in avec le XMDJVC100, CNP2000UC et le KS-BTA200.



- HD Radio™ is a proprietary trademark of iBiquity Digital Corp.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

- HD Radio™ es una marca comercial de iBiquity Digital Corp.
- iPod es una marca comercial de Apple Inc., registrada en los EE.UU. y otros países.

- *HD Radio™ est une marque de commerce d'iBiquity Digital Corp.*
- *iPod est une marque de commerce d'Apple Inc., enregistrée aux États-Unis et dans les autres pays.*

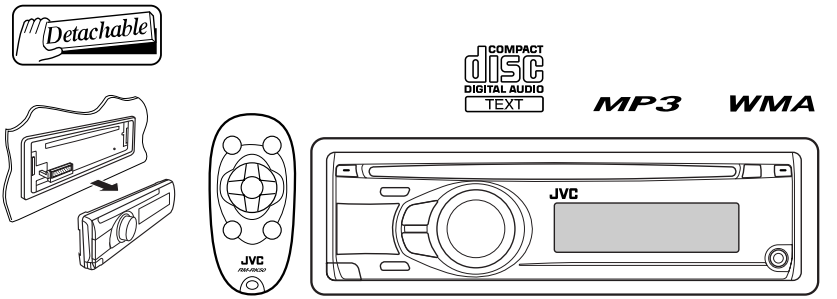
*5 To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 26 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
*6 Power cannot be supplied to the component through the CD changer jack. You need to connect the power cord supplied for the component separately.
*7 This model is a component of SIRIUS satellite radio System.
*8 This model is a component of XM satellite radio System.

*5 Para utilizar estos componentes, configure el ajuste de entrada externa correctamente (consulte la página 26 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES).
*6 No puede suministrar energía eléctrica al componente a través del jack del cambiador de CD. Es necesario conectar, aparte, el cable de alimentación suministrado con el componente.
*7 Este modelo es un componente del sistema de radio satelital SIRIUS.
*8 Este modelo es un componente del sistema de radio XM Satellite.

*5 *Pour utiliser ces appareils, réglez l'entrée extérieure correctement (voir page 26 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS).*
*6 *L'alimentation ne peut pas être fournie à l'appareil par la prise de changeur de CD. Vous devez connecter séparément le cordon d'alimentation fourni pour l'appareil.*
*7 *Ce modèle est un composant du système radio satellite SIRIUS.*
*8 *Ce modèle est un composant du système radio satellite XM.*

JVC

CD RECEIVER KD-R404



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 7.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.

INSTRUCTIONS

GET0572-001A
[UI]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and/or invisible class 1M laser radiation when open. Do not view directly with optical instruments.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION	ATTENTION	AVISO	VARNING	注意	CAUTION
VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS. IEC60825-1:2001 (ENG)	RAYONNEMENT LASER VISIBLE ET/OU INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 1M UNE FOIS OUVERT. NE PAS REGARDER DIRECTEMENT AVEC DES INSTRUMENTS OPTIQUES. (FRA)	RADIACIÓN LÁSER DE CLASE 1M VISIBLE Y/O INVISIBLE CUANDO ESTÁ ABIERTO. NO MIRAR DIRECTAMENTE CON INSTRUMENTAL ÓPTICO. (ESP)	SYNLIG OCH/ELLER OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, KLASS 1M, NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN MED OPTISKA INSTRUMENT. (SWE)	ここを開くと可視及び/または不可視のクラス1Mレーザー放射が出ます。光学装置で直接見ないでください。 (JPN)	VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS II LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM. FDA 21 CFR (ENG)

[European Union only]

Warning:

If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.

Caution on volume setting:

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

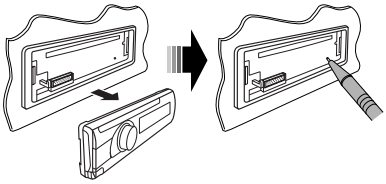
For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

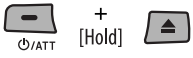
If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

How to reset your unit



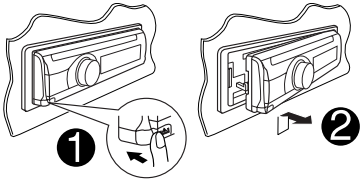
- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased (except the registered Bluetooth device, see page 10).*

How to forcibly eject a disc

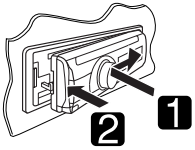


- *Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.*
- *If this does not work, reset your unit.*

Detaching the control panel



Attaching the control panel



CONTENTS

OPERATIONS

Basic operations 4
- Using the control panel 4
- Using the remote controller (RM-RK50) 5

Preparation 7
Listening to the radio 8
Disc operations 9

EXTERNAL DEVICES

Using the Bluetooth® devices 10
- Using the Bluetooth cellular phone 12
- Using the Bluetooth audio player 13

Listening to the CD changer 14
Listening to the iPod 15
Listening to the other external components 16

SETTINGS

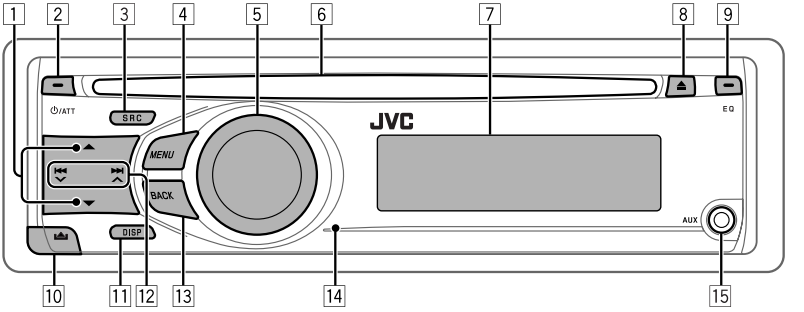
Selecting a preset sound mode 17
Title assignment 18
Bluetooth settings 19
Menu operations 20
Color settings 23

REFERENCES

More about this unit 24
Troubleshooting 27
Maintenance 31
Specifications 32

Basic operations

Using the control panel



1 • **FM/AM**: Select preset station.
• **CD/CD-CH**: Select folder.
• **IPOD**: Enter the main menu/Pause playback/Confirm selection.
• **BT-PHONE/BT-AUDIO**: Enter/go back to previous Bluetooth menu.

2 • Turn on the power.
• Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).
• Turn off the power [Hold].

3 Select the source.
FM → **AM***1 → **CD***2 → **CD-CH***2/**IPOD***2 (or **EXT INPUT**) → **BT-PHONE***2 → **BT-AUDIO***2 → **AUX IN***1 → (back to the beginning)

4 • Enter list operations.
• Enter Menu setting [Hold].

5 • Control the volume or selection [Turn].*3
• Confirm the selection [Press].*3
• **FM**: Enter SSM preset mode [Hold].*3
• **CD/CD-CH/IPOD**: Enter playback mode [Hold].*3

6 Loading slot

7 Display window

8 Eject disc.

9 Select the sound mode.

10 Detach the panel.

11 Change the display information.

12 • **FM/AM**: Search for station.
• **CD/CD-CH**: Select track.
• **IPOD**: Select track.
• **BT-PHONE/BT-AUDIO**: Select setting item/registered device.

13 Return to the previous menu.

14 Remote sensor

15 AUX (auxiliary) input jack

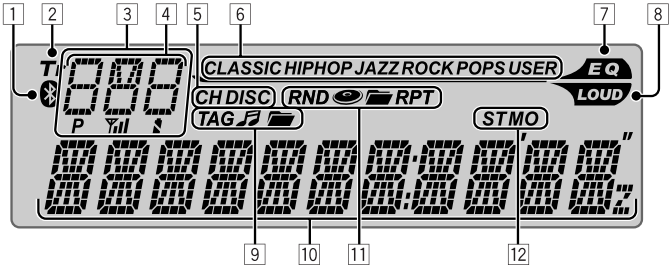
*1 *You cannot select these sources if they were disabled in the Menu (see "Menu operations" on page 22).*

*2 *You cannot select these sources if they are not ready or not connected.*

*3 *Also known as "Control dial" in this manual.*

You can change the display and button illumination (see "COLOR" on page 21).

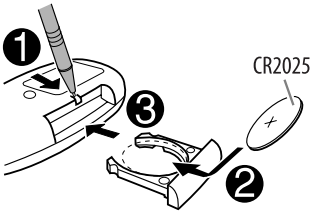
Display window



1. Bluetooth indicator
2. Tr (track) indicator
3. Status of Bluetooth device
   (Device number, [P: 1 – 5]; signal strength, [: 0 – 3]*; battery reminder, [: 0 – 3]*)
   * *As the number increases, the signal/battery power becomes stronger.*
4. Source display / Track number / Folder number / Time countdown indicator
5. Playback source indicators—CH (CD changer), DISC
6. Sound mode indicators—CLASSIC, HIP HOP, JAZZ, ROCK, POPS, USER
7. EQ (equalizer) indicator
8. LOUD (loudness) indicator
9. Disc information indicators—
   TAG (Tag information), (track/file), (folder)
10. Main display
11. Playback mode / item indicators—RND (random), (disc), (folder), RPT (repeat)
12. Tuner reception indicators—ST (stereo), MO (monaural)

Using the remote controller (RM-RK50)

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)



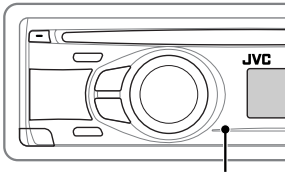
Caution:

- Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.
- Battery shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire, or the like.

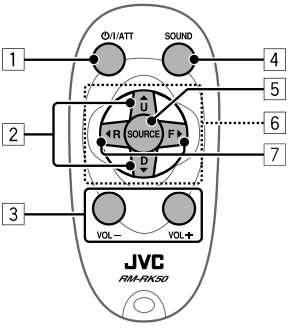
If the effectiveness of the remote controller decreases, replace the battery.

Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).



Continued on the next page



1 • Turns the power on if pressed briefly or attenuates the sound when the power is on.
• Turns the power off if pressed and held.

2 • Changes the preset stations.
• Changes the folder of the MP3/WMA.
• While playing an MP3 disc on an MP3-compatible CD changer:
– Changes the disc if pressed briefly.
– Changes the folder if pressed and held.
• While listening to an Apple iPod:
– Pauses or resumes playback with D ▼.
– Enters the main menu with ▲ U. (Now ▲ U/D ▼/◄ R/F ► work as the menu selecting buttons.)*

* ▲ U : *Returns to the previous menu.*
D ▼ : *Confirms the selection.*

3 Adjusts the volume level.

4 Selects the sound mode.

5 Selects the source.

6 For Bluetooth cellular phone:
– Answers calls if pressed briefly.
– Rejects calls if pressed and held.

7 • Searches for stations if pressed briefly.
• Fast-forwards or reverses the track if pressed and held.
• Changes the tracks if pressed briefly.
• While listening to an iPod (in menu selecting mode):
– Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press D ▼ to confirm the selection.)
– Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.
• Reverse skip/forward skip for Bluetooth audio.

Warning (to prevent accidents and damage):

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent.
- Do not leave the remote controller in a place (such as dashboards) exposed to direct sunlight for a long time.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach.
- Do not recharge, short, disassemble, heat the battery, or dispose of it in a fire.
- Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
- Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
- Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.

Preparation

Cancel the display demonstration and set the clock

• See also page 20.

1		**Turn on the power.**
2	[Hold] [Turn] → [Press]	**Cancel the display demonstrations** Select "DEMO," then "DEMO OFF." **Set the clock** Select "CLOCK" → "CLOCK SET." Adjust the hour, then press control dial once to proceed to adjust the minute. • To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

DISP	When the power is turned off: Check the current clock time when "CLOCK DISP" is set to "CLOCK OFF," (see page 20) When the power is turned on: Change the display information of the current source
FM/AM	Station name*1 → Frequency → Clock → (back to the beginning)
CD/CD-CH	Audio CD/CD Text: Disc title/performer*2 → Track title*2 → Current track number with the elapsed playing time → Current track number with the clock time → (back to the beginning) MP3/WMA: Album name/performer (folder name)*3 → Track title (file name)*3 → Current track number with the elapsed playing time → Current track number with the clock time → (back to the beginning)
IPOD	Folder name → Track name → Current track number with the elapsed playing time → Current track number with the clock time → (back to the beginning)

*1 *If no title is assigned to a station, "NO NAME" appears. To assign a title to a station, see page 18.*

*2 *If the current disc is an audio CD, "NO NAME" appears.*

*3 *If an MP3/WMA file does not have Tag information or "*TAG DISPLAY*" is set to "*TAG OFF*" (see page 20), folder name and file name appear.*

Listening to the radio

1	SRC	**Select "FM" or "AM."**
2		**Search for a station to listen—Auto Search.** Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until "M" flashes on the display, then press it repeatedly. • When receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength, "ST" lights up on the display.

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

• See also page 21.

[Hold]

[Turn] → [Press]

Select "TUNER" → "MONO" → "MONO ON"

Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

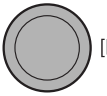
• "MO" lights up on the display.

To restore the stereo effect, repeat the same procedure to select "MONO OFF." The MO indicator goes off.

FM station automatic presetting —SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

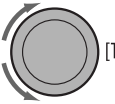
You can preset up to 18 stations for FM.

1 While listening to a station...



[Hold]

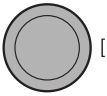
2 Select the preset number range you want to store.



[Turn]

SSM 01–06 ◄► SSM 07–12 ◄► SSM 13–18

3



[Press]

Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically.

To preset other 6 stations, repeat from step **1** again.

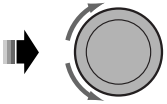
Manual presetting (FM/AM)

You can preset up to 18 stations for FM and 6 stations for AM.

Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.50 MHz into preset number "04."

1

2 **Select preset number "04."**



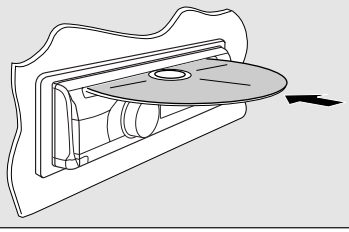
3

Selecting preset station

or

[Turn] → [Press]

Disc operations

1		**Turn on the power.**
2		**Insert a disc.** All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

Stop playing and ejecting the disc

- "NO DISC" appears. Press SRC to listen to another playback source.

Prohibiting disc ejection

\+ [Hold]

To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure.

Selecting a track/folder

[Turn] → [Press]

- For MP3/WMA discs, select the desired folder, then the desired track by performing the control dial.
- To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

Continued on the next page

Pressing (or holding) the following buttons allows you to...

	MP3/WMA: Select folder
	[Press]Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track

Selecting the playback modes

You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time.

1

[Hold]

2

[Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT ↔ RANDOM

3

[Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT		
TRACK RPT	:	Repeats current track
FOLDER RPT	:	MP3/WMA: Repeats current folder
RANDOM		
FOLDER RND	:	MP3/WMA: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders
ALL RND	:	Randomly plays all tracks

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "**RPT OFF**" or "**RND OFF**."
- To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

Using the Bluetooth® devices

For Bluetooth operations, it is required to connect the **Bluetooth adapter** (KS-BTA200) (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- Refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth adapter and the Bluetooth device.
- Refer to the list (included in the box) to check the countries where you may use the Bluetooth® function.

To use a Bluetooth device through the unit ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO") for the first time, you need to establish Bluetooth wireless connection between the unit and the device.

- Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit even if you reset your unit. Up to five devices can be registered in total.
- Only one device can be connected at a time for each source ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO").

Registering a Bluetooth device

Registration (Pairing) methods

Use either of the following items in the Bluetooth menu to register and establish the connection with a device.

- Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO" as the source to operate the Bluetooth menu.

OPEN	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the Bluetooth device.
SEARCH	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the unit.

Registering using "OPEN"

Preparation: Operate the device to turn on its Bluetooth function.

1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."

SRC

2 Select "NEW DEVICE."

3 Select "OPEN."

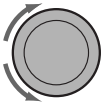
4 Enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number) code to the unit.

- You can enter any number you like (1-digit to 16-digit number). [Initial: 0000]

* *Some devices have their own PIN code. Enter the specified PIN code to the unit.*

1 Move to the next (or previous) number position.

2 Select a number.


[Turn]

3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 until you finish entering a PIN code.

4 Confirm the entry.

"OPEN.." flashes on the display.

5 Use the Bluetooth device to search and connect.

On the device to be connected, enter the same PIN code you have just entered for this unit.
"CONNECTED" appears on the display.
Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

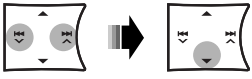
The device remains registered even after you disconnect the device. Use "CONNECT" (or activate "AUTO CNNCT") to connect the same device from next time on. (See the following and page 19.)

Connecting a device

Perform steps **1** and **2** on left column, then...

1 • **Select "SEARCH" to search for available devices.**
The unit searches and displays the list of the available devices. If no available device is detected, "UNFOUND" appears.
• **Select "SPECIAL" to connect a special device.**
The unit displays the list of the preset devices.

2 **Select a device you want to connect.**



3 • **For available devices...**
Enter the specific PIN code of the device to the unit.
Refer to the instructions supplied with the device to check the PIN code.
Use the Bluetooth device to connect.
Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.
• **For special device...**
Use "OPEN" or "SEARCH" to connect.

Continued on the next page

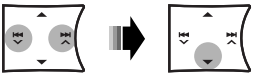
Connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device

1 **Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."**

SRC

2 **Select a registered device you want to connect/disconnect/delete.**

3 • **Select "CONNECT" or "DISCONNECT" to connect/disconnect the selected device.**
• **Select "DELETE," then "YES" to delete the selected device.**



You can set the unit to connect the Bluetooth device automatically when the unit is turned on. (See "AUTO CNNCT" on page 19.)

Using the Bluetooth cellular phone

1	SRC	**Select "BT-PHONE."**
2		**Enter the Bluetooth menu.**
3	—	**Make a call or setting using the Bluetooth setting menu. (See the following and page 19.)**

When a call comes in....

The source is automatically changed to "BT-PHONE."
• The display will flash in blue (see "RING COLOR" on page 21 for setting.)

When "AUTO ANSWER" is activated....
The unit answers the incoming calls automatically, see page 19.
• When "AUTO ANSWER" is deactivated, press any button (except ⏻/ATT/⏏/▲) to answer the incoming call.
• You can adjust the microphone volume level (see page 19).

To end the call
Hold any button (except ⏻/ATT/⏏/▲).

When a text message comes in....

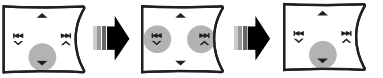
If the cellular phone is compatible with text message (notified through JVC Bluetooth adapter) and "MSG INFO" (message info) is set to "AUTO" (see page 19), the unit rings to inform you of the message arrival.
• "RCV MESSAGE" (receiving message) appears on the display and the display illuminate in blue (see "RING COLOR" on page 21 for setting).

Making a call

You can make a call using the following methods.

Select "BT-PHONE," then follow the following steps to make a call:
• To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

1 Enter the "DIAL" menu.



2 Select a calling method.

PHONE BOOK ↔ MISSED ↔ NUMBER
RECEIVED ↔ REDIAL ↔ VOICE DIAL

Call history:

1 Select a call history (REDIAL*, RECEIVED*, MISSED*).
2 Then select a name (if it is acquired) or phone number.

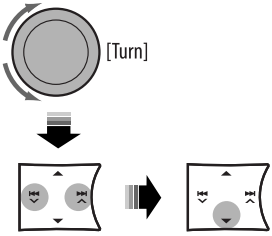
Phone book:

1 Select "PHONE BOOK*".
The list of phone number appears.
2 Select a name from the list.

Direct dialing:

1 Select "NUMBER."

2 Enter the phone number.



* *Displays only when your cellular phone is equipped with these functions and is compatible with this unit.*

Voice dialing:

1 Select "VOICE DIAL."

"SAY NAME" appears on the display.

2 Speak the name you want to call.
- If your cellular phone does not support the voice recognition system, "ERROR" appears on the display.
- Using voice tags may be difficult in a noisy environment or during an emergency.

Using the Bluetooth audio player

SRC	**Select "BT-AUDIO."** If playback does not start, operate the Bluetooth audio player to start playback. • Operate the Bluetooth audio player to pause (if playback does not pause when you change the source).

	Reverse skip/forward skip
	Pause/start playback* * Operation may be different according to the connected Bluetooth audio player.
	Enter setting menu (Device list)

• Refer also to page 12 for connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device.

Bluetooth Information:
If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/> (English website only)

Listening to the CD changer

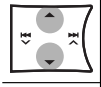
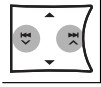
It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer (separately purchased) with your unit. You can connect a CD changer to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

- You can only play conventional CDs (including CD Text) and MP3 discs.

Preparation: Make sure "CH / IPOD" is selected in the "SRC SELECT" → "EXT IN" setting, see page 22.

1	SRC	**Select "CD-CH."**
2	MENU	**Enter the list mode.**
3	[Turn] → [Press]	**Select a disc, folder, then the track.** Playback starts automatically. • If there is no disc on the selected tray, the unit beeps.

- To select a desired folder/track to start playback (for MP3 discs), repeat step **2** and **3** above until the desired folder/track is selected. The selection always start from disc number first.

	MP3: Select folders
	[Press] Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track

Selecting the playback modes

1 [Hold]

2 [Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT ↔ RANDOM

3 [Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT		
TRACK RPT	:	Repeats current track
FOLDER RPT	:	MP3: Repeats all tracks of current folder
DISC RPT	:	Repeats all tracks of the current disc
RANDOM		
FOLDER RND	:	MP3: Randomly plays all tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder
DISC RND	:	Randomly plays all tracks of current disc
ALL RND	:	Randomly plays all tracks of the discs in the magazine

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "**RPT OFF**" or "**RND OFF**."
- To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

Listening to the iPod

Before operating, connect the **Interface adapter for iPod**, KS-PD100 (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

Preparation: Make sure "CH / IPOD" is selected in the "SRC SELECT" → "EXT IN" setting, see page 22.

1	SRC	**Select "IPOD."**
2		**Select a song.** Playback starts automatically.

Selecting a track from the menu

1 Enter the main menu.

This mode will be canceled if no operations are done for about 5 seconds.

2 Select the desired menu.

PLAYLISTS ↔ ARTISTS ↔ ALBUMS ↔ SONGS ↔ GENRES ↔ COMPOSERS ↔ (back to the beginning)

3 Confirm the selection.

- To return to the previous menu, press ▲.
- If a track is selected, playback starts automatically.

	Pause playback • To resume playback, press the button again.
	[Press] Select tracks [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track

Selecting the playback modes

1

[Hold]

2

[Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT ↔ RANDOM

3

[Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT		
ONE RPT	:	Functions the same as "Repeat One" of the iPod.
ALL RPT	:	Functions the same as "Repeat All" of the iPod.
RANDOM		
ALBUM RND*	:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums" of the iPod.
SONG RND	:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs" of the iPod.

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "**RPT OFF**" or "**RND OFF**."
- To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

* *Functions only if you select "ALL" in "ALBUMS" of the main "MENU."*

Listening to the other external components

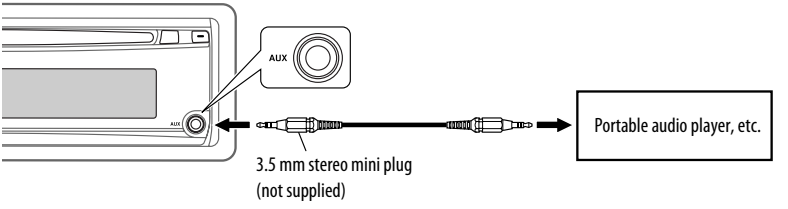
You can connect an external component to:

- CD changer jack on the rear of this unit using the following adapters:
  – **Line Input Adapter**, KS-U57 (separately purchsed)
  – **AUX Input Adapter**, KS-U58 (separately purchsed)
  Preparation: Make sure "EXT INPUT" is selected in the "SRC SELECT" → "EXT IN" setting, see page 22.

- AUX (auxiliary) input jack on the control panel.
  Preparation: Make sure "AUX ON" is selected in the "SRC SELECT" → "AUX IN" setting, see page 22.

1	SRC	**Select "EXT INPUT" or "AUX IN."**
2	—	**Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**
3	+ [Turn] −	**Adjust the volume.**
4	—	**Adjust the sound as you want (see pages 17 and 18).**

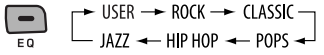
Connecting an external component to the AUX input jack



Selecting a preset sound mode

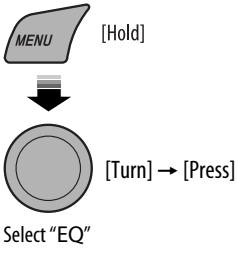
You can select a preset sound mode suitable to the music genre.

- See also page 20 ("EQ").



or

Selecting from Menu.



Preset value setting for each sound mode

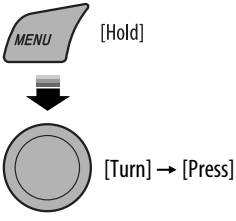
Sound mode	Preset value									
	BASS			MIDDLE			TREBLE			LOUD (loudness)
	Freq.	Level	Q	Freq.	Level	Q	Freq.	Level	Q	
USER	60 Hz	00	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.0	10.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	OFF
ROCK	100 Hz	+03	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	Q1.25	
CLASSIC	80 Hz	+01	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	Q1.25	
POPS	100 Hz	+02	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	+01	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	Q1.25	
HIP HOP	60 Hz	+04	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	–02	Q1.0	10.0 kHz	+01	Q1.25	
JAZZ	80 Hz	+03	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	Q1.25	

Freq.: Frequency Q: Q-slope

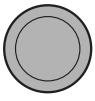
Storing your own sound mode

You can store your own adjustments in memory.

1 Select "USER" for "EQ."



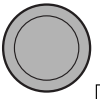
2 While "USER" is shown on the display...



- If no operation is done for about 30 seconds, the operation will be canceled.

Continued on the next page

3 Select a tone.



[Turn] → [Press]

4 Adjust the sound elements of the selected tone.

[Turn] → [Press]

1 Adjust the frequency.
2 Adjust the level.
3 Adjust the Q-slope.

Sound elements	Range/selectable items		
	BASS	MIDDLE	TREBLE
Frequency	60 Hz 80 Hz 100 Hz 120 Hz	500 Hz 1.0 kHz 1.5 kHz 2.5 kHz	7.5 kHz 10.0 kHz 12.5 kHz 15.0 kHz
Level	–06 to +06	–06 to +06	–06 to +06
Q	Q0.5 Q1.0 Q1.5 Q2.0	Q0.75 Q1.0 Q1.25 Q1.5	Q0.75 Q1.25

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to adjust other sound characteristics.

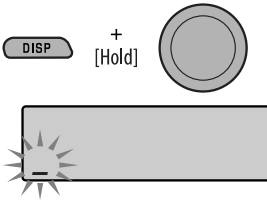
The adjustment made will be stored automatically.

Title assignment

You can assign titles to 30 station frequencies (FM and AM) using 8 characters (maximum) for each title.

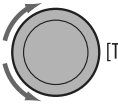
1 Select "FM" or "AM."

2 Show the title entry screen.



3 Assign a title.

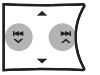
1 Select a character.



[Turn]

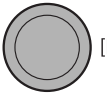
A	B	C	D	E	F	G	
H	I	J	K	L	M	N	
O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	
V	W	X	Y	Z	0	1	
2	3	4	5	6	7	8	
9	–	/	<	>	space		

2 Move to the next (or previous) character position.



3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 until you finish entering the title.

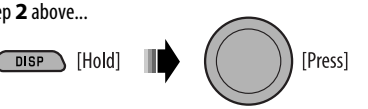
4 Finish the procedure.



[Press]

To erase the entire title

In step **2** above...



Bluetooth settings

You can change the settings listed on the right column according to your preference.

1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."

SRC

2 Enter the Bluetooth menu.

3 Select "SETTINGS."

4 Select a setting item.

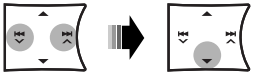
AUTO CNNCT ↔ AUTO ANSWER*1 ↔ MSG INFO*2 ↔ MIC SETTING*1 ↔ VERSION*3

*1 *Appears only when a Bluetooth phone is connected.*

*2 *Appears only when a Bluetooth phone is connected and it is compatible with text message (notified through JVC Bluetooth adapter).*

*3 *Bluetooth Audio: Shows only "Version."*

5 Change the setting accordingly.



Setting menu (__: Initial)

AUTO CNNCT (connect)

When the unit is turned on, the connection is established automatically with...

OFF: No Bluetooth device.

LAST: The last connected Bluetooth device.

ORDER: The available registered Bluetooth device found at first.

AUTO ANSWER

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

ON: The unit answers the incoming calls automatically.

OFF: The unit does not answer the calls automatically. Answer the calls manually.

REJECT: The unit rejects all incoming calls.

MSG INFO (message info)

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

AUTOMATIC: The unit informs you of the arrival of a message by ringing and displaying "RCV MESSAGE" (receiving message).
- The display illuminate in blue (see "RING COLOR" on page 21).

MANUAL: The unit does not inform you of the arrival of a message.

MIC SETTING (microphone setting)

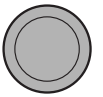
Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

Adjust microphone volume connected to the Bluetooth adapter, [LEVEL 01/02/03].

VERSION

The Bluetooth software and hardware versions are shown.

Menu operations

1	2	3
[Hold]	 [Turn] → [Press]	**Repeat step 2 if necessary.** • To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

Initial: **Underlined**

Category	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
DEMO	**DEMO** Display demonstration	• **DEMO ON** : Display demonstration will be activated automatically if no operation is done for about 20 seconds, [7]. • **DEMO OFF** : Cancels.
CLOCK	**CLOCK DISP***1 Clock display	• **CLOCK ON** : Clock time is shown on the display at all times when the power is turned off. • **CLOCK OFF** : Cancels; pressing DISP will show the clock time for about 5 seconds when the power is turned off, [7].
	CLOCK SET Clock setting	: Adjust the hour, then the minute, [7]. [Initial: 1:00]
EQ	**EQ** Equalizer	: Select a preset sound mode suitable to the music genre. **USER, ROCK, CLASSIC, POPS, HIP HOP, JAZZ**
DISPLAY	**DIMMER** Dimmer	• **DIMMER ON** : Dims the display and button illumination. • **DIMMER OFF** : Cancels.
	SCROLL*2 Scroll	• **SCROLL ONCE** : Scrolls the displayed information once. • **SCROLL AUTO** : Repeats scrolling (at 5-second intervals). • **SCROLL OFF** : Cancels. Pressing DISP for more than one second can scroll the display regardless of the setting.
	TAG DISPLAY Tag display	• **TAG ON** : Shows the Tag information while playing MP3/WMA tracks. • **TAG OFF** : Cancels.

*1 *If the power supply is not interrupted by turning off the ignition key of your car, it is recommended to select "*CLOCK OFF*" to save the car's battery.*

*2 *Some characters or symbols will not be shown correctly (or will be blanked) on the display.*

Category	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
TUNER	**MONO***3 Monaural mode	• **MONO ON** : Activate monaural mode to improve FM reception, but stereo effect will be lost, [8]. • **MONO OFF** : Restore the stereo effect.
	IF BAND Intermediate frequency band	• **AUTO** : Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) • **WIDE** : Subject to interference noises from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
COLOR	**COLOR 01 – COLOR 29, USER**	: Select one of the preset or user color for display and button (except **EQ**/⏻/ATT/⏏) illumination. (See also page 23 for USER color setting.)
MENU COLOR	**MENU COLOR** Menu color	• **OFF** : Cancels. • **ON** : Changes the display and button (except **EQ**/⏻/ATT/⏏) illumination during menu, list search and playback mode operations.
RING COLOR	**RING COLOR***4 Ring color	• **OFF** : Cancels. • **ON** : When a call comes in, the display will flash in blue. • The display will change to the original color when the call is answered or the incoming call stops. When the unit receive a text message, the display only illuminate in blue.
AUDIO	**FADER***5 Fader	**R06 – F06** : Adjust the front and rear speaker output balance. [Initial: 00]
	BALANCE*6 Balance	**L06 – R06** : Adjust the left and right speaker output balance. [Initial: 00]
	LOUD Loudness	• **LOUD OFF** : Cancels. • **LOUD ON** : Boost low and high frequencies to produce a well-balanced sound at a low volume level.
	VOL ADJUST Volume adjust	**VOL ADJ –05** — **VOL ADJ +05** [Initial: VOL ADJ 00] : Preset the volume adjustment level of each source (except FM), compared to the FM volume level. The volume level will automatically increase or decrease when you change the source. • Before making an adjustment, select the source you want to adjust. • "VOL ADJ FIX" appears on the display if "FM" is selected as the source.

*3 *Displayed only when the source is "FM."*

*4 *Displayed only when Bluetooth adapter, KS-BTA200 is connected.*

*5 *If you are using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to "00."*

*6 *This adjustment will not affect the subwoofer output.*

Continued on the next page

Category	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]		
AUDIO	**L/O MODE** Line output mode	• **SUB.W**	:	Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting a subwoofer (through an external amplifier).
		• **REAR**	:	Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting the speakers (through an external amplifier).
	SUB.W FREQ*7 Subwoofer cutoff frequency	• **LOW**	:	Frequencies lower than 72 Hz are sent to the subwoofer.
		• **MID**	:	Frequencies lower than 111 Hz are sent to the subwoofer.
		• **HIGH**	:	Frequencies lower than 157 Hz are sent to the subwoofer.
	SUB.W LEVEL*7 Subwoofer level	**SUB.W 00 — SUB.W 08**	:	Adjust the subwoofer output level. [Initial: SUB.W 04]
	BEEP Keypress tone	• **BEEP OFF**	:	Deactivates the keypress tone.
		• **BEEP ON**	:	Activates the keypress tone.
	AMP GAIN*8 Amplifier gain control	• **LOW POWER**	:	VOLUME 00 – VOLUME 30 (Select if the maximum power of each speaker is less than 50 W to prevent damaging the speaker.)
		• **HIGH POWER**	:	VOLUME 00 – VOLUME 50
SRC SELECT	**AM***9 AM station	• **AM OFF**	:	Disable "AM" in source selection.
		• **AM ON**	:	Enable "AM" in source selection, [4].
	EXT IN*10 External input	• **CH / IPOD**	:	To use a JVC CD changer, [14], or an Apple iPod, [15].
		• **EXT INPUT**	:	To connect portable audio player to the CD changer jack, [16].
	AUX IN*11 Auxiliary input	• **AUX OFF**	:	Disable "AUX IN" in source selection.
		• **AUX ON**	:	Enable "AUX IN" in source selection, [4].

*7 *Displayed only when "*L/O MODE*" is set to "*SUB.W*."*

*8 *The volume level automatically changes to "VOLUME 30" if you change to "*LOW POWER*" with the volume level set higher than "VOLUME 30."*

*9 *Displayed only when any source other than "AM" is selected.*

*10 *Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—FM, AM, CD, Bluetooth, or AUX IN.*

*11 *Displayed only when any source other than "AUX IN" is selected.*

Color settings

Creating your own color —USER Color

You can create your own colors—"DAY COLOR" or "NIGHT COLOR."

DAY COLOR: Used when "DIMMER" is set to "DIMMER OFF."

NIGHT COLOR: Used when "DIMMER" is set to "DIMMER ON."

1

[Hold]

2 **Select "COLOR" → "USER."**

[Turn] → [Press]

3 **While "USER" is shown on the display...**

[Hold]

4

[Turn] → [Press]

DAY COLOR ↔ NIGHT COLOR

5 **Select a primary color.**

[Turn] → [Press]

RED ↔ GREEN ↔ BLUE

6 **Adjust the level (00 to 31) of the selected primary color.**

[Turn] → [Press]

7 **Repeat steps 5 and 6 to adjust other primary colors.**

8 **Exit from the setting.**

- If no operation is done for about 30 seconds, the operation will be canceled.

More about this unit

Basic operations

Turning on the power

- By pressing SRC button on the unit, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback also starts.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a track, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously next time you turn on the power.

General

- If you change the source while listening to a disc, playback stops.
  Next time you select "CD" as the playback source, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously.
- After ejecting a disc, "NO DISC" appears and you cannot operate some of the buttons. Insert another disc or press SRC to select another playback source.
- If no operation is done for about 30 seconds after pressing MENU button, the operation will be canceled.

Tuner operations

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
  – All previously stored stations are erased and the stations are stored anew.
  – When SSM is over, the station stored in the lowest preset number will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, the previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.

Disc operations

Caution for DualDisc playback

- The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

General

- This unit has been designed to reproduce CDs/CD Texts, and CD-Rs (Recordable)/CD-RWs (Rewritable) in audio CD (CD-DA), MP3 and WMA formats.
- When a disc is inserted upside down, "PLEASE" and "EJECT" appear alternately on the display. Press ⏏ to eject the disc.
- MP3 and WMA "tracks" (words "file" and "track" are used interchangeably) are recorded in "folders."
- While fast-forwarding or reversing on an MP3 or WMA disc, you can only hear intermittent sounds.

Playing a CD-R or CD-RW

- Use only "finalized" CD-Rs or CD-RWs.
- This unit can only play back files of the same type as those detected first if a disc includes both audio CD (CD-DA) files and MP3/WMA files.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some CD-Rs or CD-RWs may not play back on this unit because of their disc characteristics, or for the following reasons:
  – Discs are dirty or scratched.
  – Moisture condensation has occurred on the lens inside the unit.
  – The pickup lens inside the unit is dirty.
  – The files on the CD-R/CD-RW are written using the "Packet Write" method.
  – There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stained, scratched, warped, etc.).

- CD-RWs may require a longer readout time since the reflectance of CD-RWs is lower than that of regular CDs.
- Do not use the following CD-Rs or CD-RWs:
  – Discs with stickers, labels, or a protective seal stuck to the surface.
  – Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.

  Using these discs under high temperature or high humidity may cause malfunctions or damage to the unit.

Playing an MP3/WMA disc

- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files with the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3 files and for WMA files.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files meeting the conditions below:
  – Bit rate: 8 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency:
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG-1)
    24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG-2)
  – Disc format: ISO 9660 Level 1/Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name
- The maximum number of characters for file/folder names vary depending on the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3> or <.wma>).
  – ISO 9660 Level 1: up to 12 characters
  – ISO 9660 Level 2: up to 31 characters
  – Romeo: up to 128 characters
  – Joliet: up to 64 characters
  – Windows long file name: up to 128 characters
- This unit can recognize a total of 512 files, 255 folders, and 8 hierarchical levels.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).

  Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in the elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. In particular, this difference becomes noticeable after performing the search function.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded in MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded in an inappropriate format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded in lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, it is automatically inserted into the loading slot again to protect it from dust. Playback starts automatically.

Bluetooth operations

General

- While driving, do not perform complicated operation such as dialing the numbers, using phone book, etc. When you perform these operations, stop your car in a safe place.
- Some Bluetooth devices may not be connected to this unit depending on the Bluetooth version of the device.
- This unit may not work for some Bluetooth devices.
- Connecting condition may vary depending on the circumstances around you.
- When the unit is turned off, the device is disconnected.

Warning messages for Bluetooth operations

- **ERROR CNNCT** (Error Connection):
  The device is registered but the connection has failed. Use "CONNECT" to connect the device again. (See page 12.)

Continued on the next page

- **ERROR**
  Try the operation again. If "ERROR" appears again, check if the device supports the function you have tried.
- **UNFOUND**
  No available Bluetooth device is detected by "SEARCH."
- **LOADING**
  The unit is updating the phone book*.
  * *Displays only when your cellular phone is equipped with these functions and is compatible with this unit.*
- **PLEASE WAIT**
  The unit is preparing to use the Bluetooth function. If the message does not disappear, turn off and turn on the unit, then connect the device again (or reset the unit).
- **RESET 8**
  Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

iPod

- You can control the following types of iPods through the interface adapter.
  – iPod with dock connector (3rd Generation)
  – iPod with Click Wheel (4th Generation)
  – iPod mini
  – iPod photo
  – iPod nano*1
  – iPod video (5th Generation)*2
  – iPod classic 2007*2
  – iPod nano (3rd Generation)*2
  *1 *When you connect the iPod nano to the interface adapter, be sure to disconnect the headphones; otherwise, no sound is heard.*
  *2 *It is not possible to browse video files on the "Videos" menu.*
- If the iPod does not play correctly, please update your iPod software to the latest version. For details about updating your iPod, visit <http://www.apple.com>.
- When you turn on this unit, the iPod is charged through this unit.
- While the iPod is connected, all operations from the iPod are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
- If the text information includes more than 11 characters, it scrolls on the display. This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:
When operating an iPod, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/> (English website only)

Title assignment

- If you try to assign titles to more than 30 station frequencies, "NAME FULL" appears. Delete unwanted titles before assignment.

Menu operations

- If you change the "AMP GAIN" setting from "HIGH POWER" to "LOW POWER" while the volume level is set higher than "VOLUME 30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "VOLUME 30."

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).
	• "AUX IN" cannot be selected.	Check the "SRC SELECT" → "AUX IN" setting (see page 22).
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually.
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the antenna firmly.
	• "AM" cannot be selected.	Check the "SRC SELECT" → "AM" setting (see page 22).
Disc playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played back. • Tracks on the CD-R/CD-RW cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized CD-R/CD-RW. • Finalize the CD-R/CD-RW with the component which you used for recording.
	• Disc can neither be played back nor ejected.	• Unlock the disc (see page 9). • Eject the disc forcibly (see page 3).
	• Disc sound is sometimes interrupted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc. • Check the cords and connections.
	• "NO DISC" appears on the display.	Insert a playable disc into the loading slot.
	• "PLEASE" and "EJECT" appear alternately on the display.	Press ⏏, then insert a disc correctly.

Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
MP3/WMA playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Use a disc with MP3/WMA tracks recorded in a format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, Level 2, Romeo, or Joliet. • Add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3 or WMA tracks.)
	• A longer readout time is required ("READING" keeps flashing on the display).	Do not use too many hierarchical levels and folders.
	• Tracks do not play back in the order you have intended them to play.	The playback order is determined when the files are recorded.
	• The elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc.
	• The correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (upper case), numbers, and a limited number of symbols.
Bluetooth*	• Bluetooth device does not detect the unit.	The unit can be connected with one Bluetooth cellular phone and one Bluetooth audio device at a time. While connecting a device, this unit cannot be detected from another device. Disconnect currently connected device and search again.
	• The unit does not detect the Bluetooth device.	• Check the Bluetooth setting of the device. • Search from the Bluetooth device. After the device detects the unit, select "OPEN" on the unit to connect the device. (See page 11.)

* *For Bluetooth operations, refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth Adapter.*

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Bluetooth	• The unit does not make pairing with the Bluetooth device.	• Enter the same PIN code for both the unit and target device. • Select the device name from "SPECIAL," then try to connect again. (See page 11.) • Try to pair/connect from the Bluetooth device.
	• Echo or noise occurs.	Adjust the microphone unit position.
	• Phone sound quality is poor.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth cellular phone. • Move the car to a place where you can get a better signal reception.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a Bluetooth audio device.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth audio device. • Disconnect the device connected for "BT-PHONE." • Turn off, then turn on the unit. • (When the sound is not yet restored,) connect the device again.
	• The connected audio device cannot be controlled.	Check whether the connected audio device supports AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile).
CD changer	• "NO DISC" appears on the display.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "NO MAGAZINE" appears on the display.	Insert the magazine.
	• "RESET 8" appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "RESET 1" – "RESET 7" appears on the display.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).

Continued on the next page

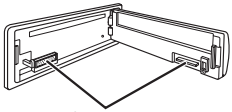
	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
iPod	• The iPod does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Update the firmware version. • Charge the battery.
	• The sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod.
	• "NO IPOD" appears on the display.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Charge the battery.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart the playback operation (see page 15).
	• No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano.	• Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano. • Update the firmware version of the iPod nano.
	• "NO FILES" appears on the display.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod.
	• "RESET 1" – "RESET 7" appears on the display.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod. Then, connect it again.
	• "RESET 8" appears on the display.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod.

- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Victor Company of Japan, Limited (JVC) is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors. To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connectors

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the unit in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the unit may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture has evaporated.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc in its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs in cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly.
If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvents (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.

To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:

Single CD (8 cm disc)

Warped disc

Sticker and sticker residue

Stick-on label

Unusual shape

C-thru Disc (semi-transparent disc)

Transparent or semi-transparent parts on its recording area

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION		
Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.
Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
Tone Control Range:	Bass:	±12 dB (60 Hz, 80 Hz, 100 Hz, 120 Hz) Q0.5, Q1.0, Q1.5, Q2.0
	Middle:	±12 dB (500 Hz, 1.0 kHz, 1.5 kHz, 2.5 kHz) Q0.75, Q1.0, Q1.25, Q1.5
	Treble:	±12 dB (7.5 kHz, 10.0 kHz, 12.5 kHz, 15.0 kHz) Q0.75, Q1.25
Frequency Response:		40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		70 dB
Line-Out Level/Impedance:		2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
Subwoofer-Out Level/Impedance:		2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
Output Impedance:		1 kΩ
Other Terminal:		AUX (auxiliary) input jack, CD changer jack, Antenna input

TUNER SECTION		
Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
	AM:	531 kHz to 1 602 kHz
FM Tuner	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 µV/75 Ω)
	50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 µV/75 Ω)
	Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
	Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
	Stereo Separation:	30 dB
AM Tuner	Sensitivity:	20 µV
	Selectivity:	35 dB

CD PLAYER SECTION	
Type:	Compact disc player
Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)
Number of Channels:	2 channels (stereo)
Frequency Response:	5 Hz to 20 000 Hz
Dynamic Range:	96 dB
Signal-to-Noise Ratio:	98 dB
Wow and Flutter:	Less than measurable limit
MP3 Decoding Format: (MPEG1/2 Audio Layer 3)	Max. Bit Rate: 320 kbps
WMA (Windows Media® Audio) Decoding Format:	Max. Bit Rate: 192 kbps

GENERAL		
Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
Grounding System:		Negative ground
Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C
Dimensions (W × H × D): (approx.)	Installation Size:	182 mm × 52 mm × 160 mm
	Panel Size:	188 mm × 58 mm × 6 mm
Mass:		1.3 kg (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

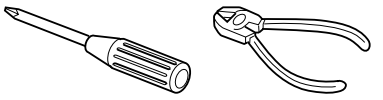
JVC

EN

© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0808DTSMDTJEIN

JVC KD-R404
Installation/Connection Manual



GET0572-002A
[UI]

0808DTSMDTJEIN
EN
© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

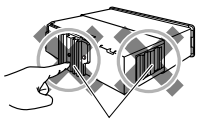
WARNINGS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes:

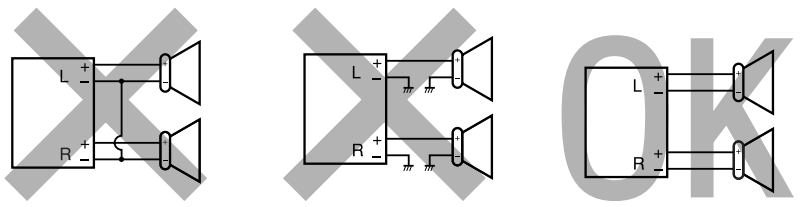
- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with a maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8** Ω). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "AMP GAIN" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 22 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



Heat sink

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

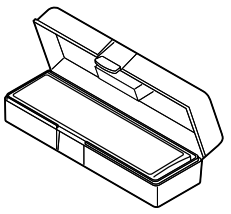
- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.



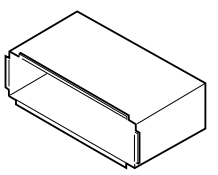
Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this unit. If any item is missing, consult your JVC car audio dealer immediately.

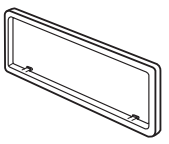
Ⓐ / Ⓑ Hard case/Control panel



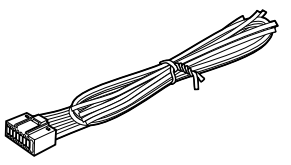
Ⓒ Sleeve



Ⓓ Trim plate



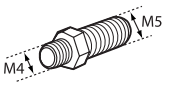
Ⓔ Power cord



Ⓕ Washer (ø5)

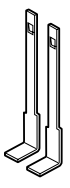
Ⓖ Lock nut (M5)

Ⓗ Mounting bolt (M4 × 5 mm; M5 × 12.5 mm)



Ⓘ Rubber cushion

Ⓙ Handles



Ⓚ Remote controller

Ⓛ Battery

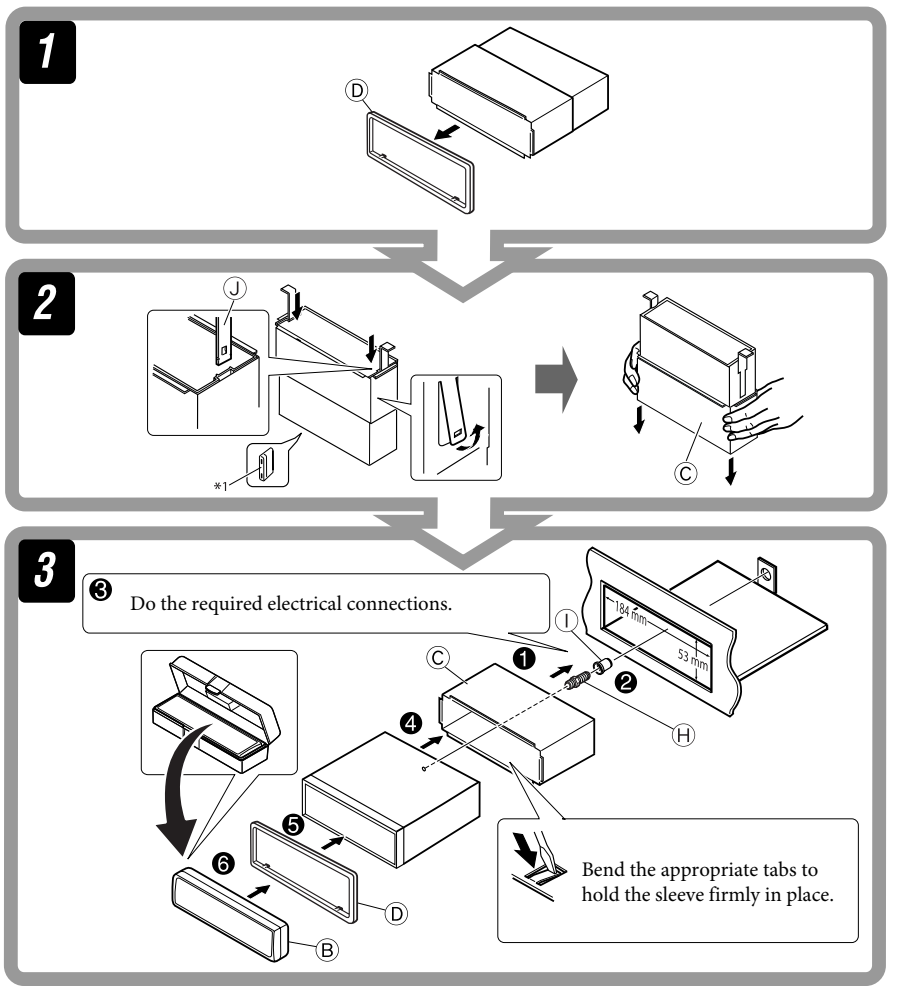
TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.**
* Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.**
* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **This unit becomes hot.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **This unit does not work at all.**
* Have you reset your unit?

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

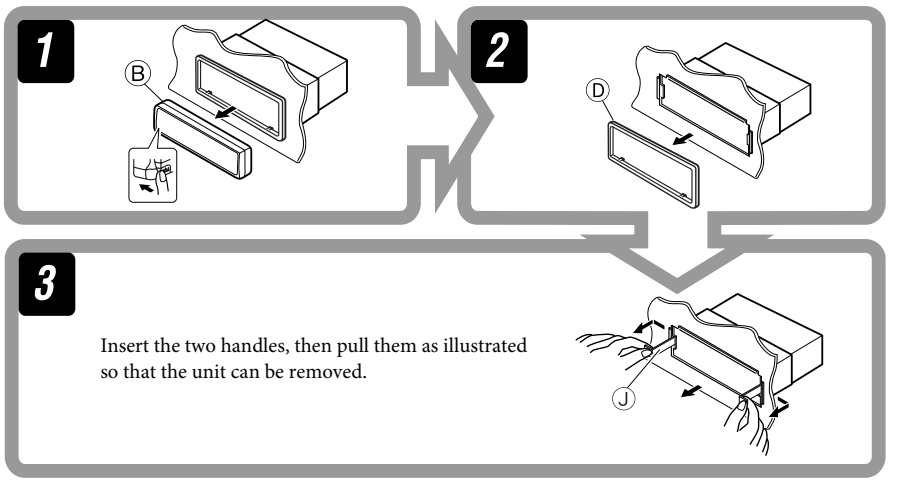
The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

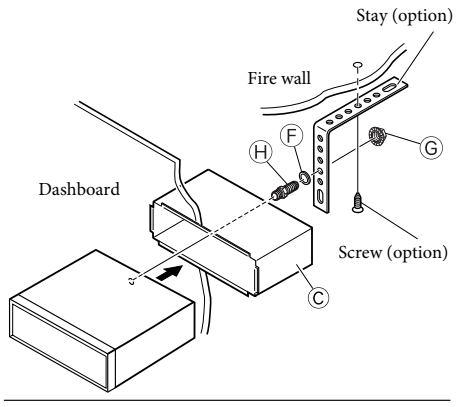


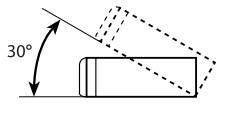
Removing the unit

Before removing the unit, release the rear section.



When using the optional stay

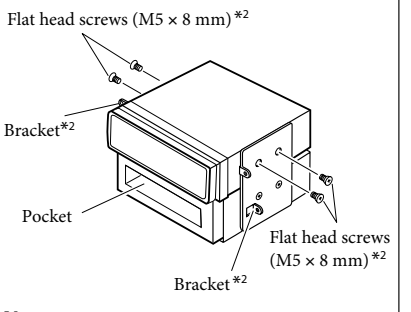




Install the unit at an angle of less than 30°.

When installing the unit without using the sleeve

In a Toyota car for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place.



Note : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm-long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

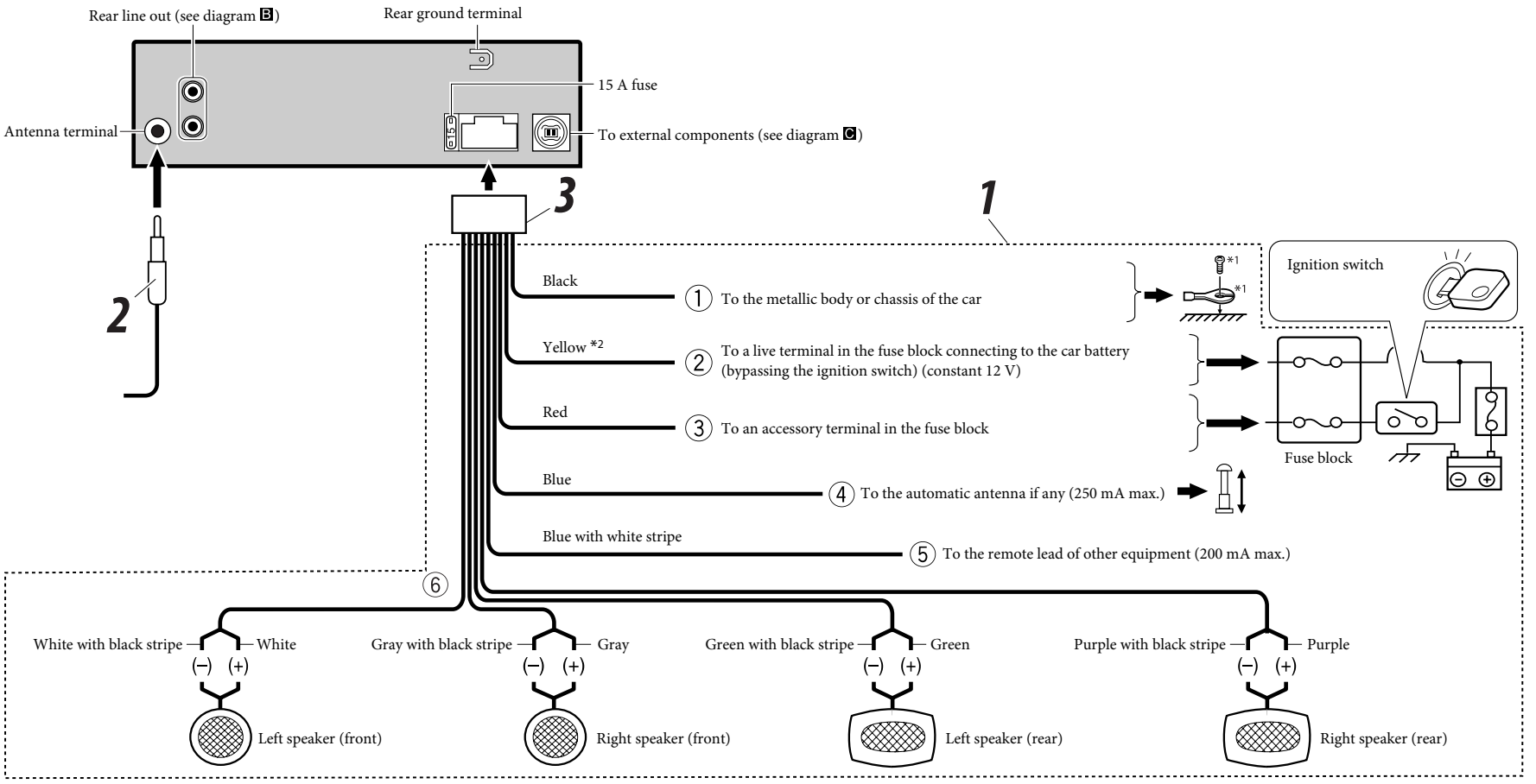
*1 When you stand the unit, be careful not to damage the fuse on the rear.
*2 Not supplied for this unit.

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

A Typical connections

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

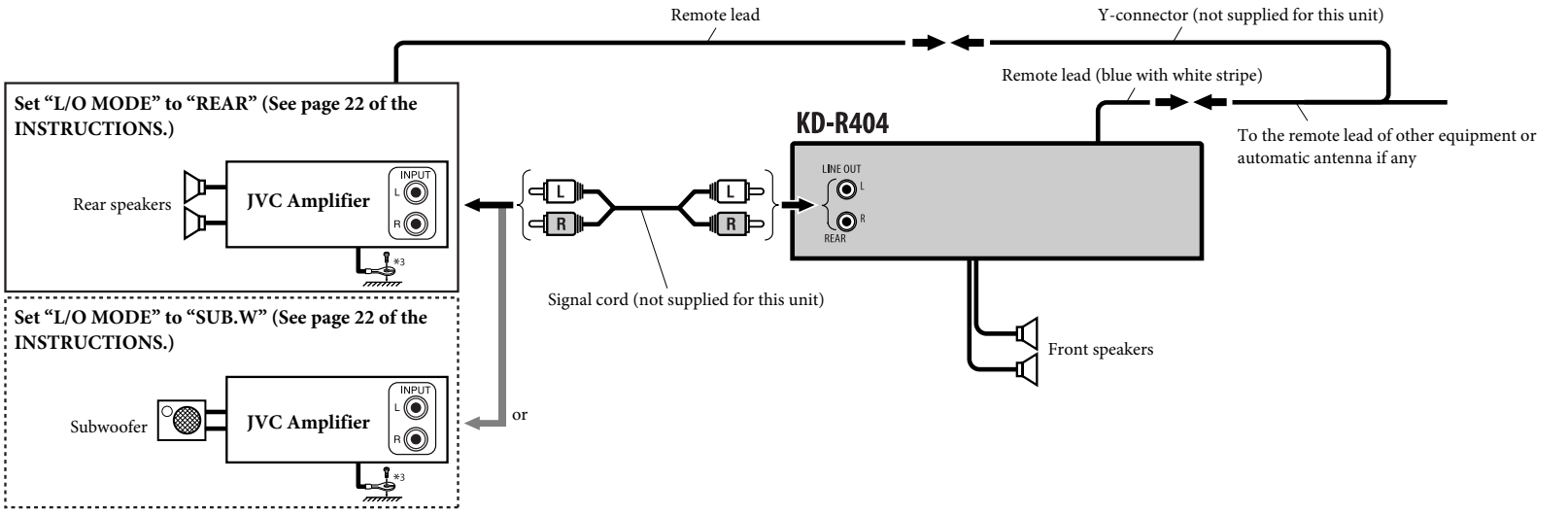
1 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
2 Connect the antenna cord.
3 Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.



B Connecting the external amplifier or subwoofer

You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.

- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**



C Connecting the external components

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapter.

CAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.

You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters.

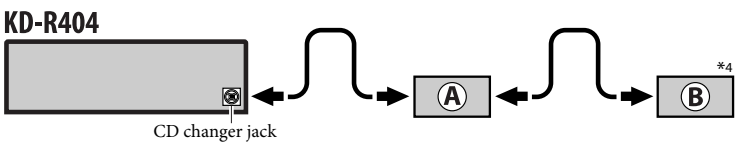
- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod	KS-PD100
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter	KS-U58

iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

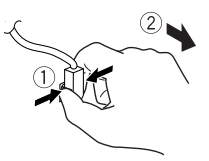
When connecting more than one component (maximum: two), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.

When connecting two components in series



Ⓐ **KS-BTA200**
Ⓑ*4 **CD-CH / KS-PD100 / KS-U57 / KS-U58**

To disconnect the connector



Hold the connector tightly (①), then pull it out (②).

*1 Not supplied for this unit.
*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise the power cannot be turned on.
*3 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.
*4 To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 22 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

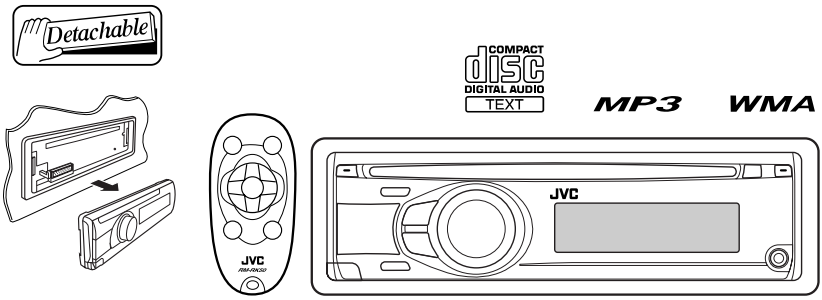
JVC

ENGLISH

ไทย

CD RECEIVER KD-R406/KD-R405

เครื่องเล่น CD KD-R406/KD-R405



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 7.
ดูที่หน้า 7 เพื่อยกเลิกการสาธิตภาพประกอบ

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
กรุณาดูคู่มือที่แยกต่างหาก ในการติดตั้งและการเชื่อมต่อ

INSTRUCTIONS
คำแนะนำ

GET0571-001A
[U/UH]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and/or invisible class 1M laser radiation when open. Do not view directly with optical instruments.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION	ATTENTION	AVISO	VARNING	注意	CAUTION
VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS. IEC60825-1:2001 (ENG)	RAYONNEMENT LASER VISIBLE ET/OU INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 1M UNE FOIS OUVERT. NE PAS REGARDER DIRECTEMENT AVEC DES INSTRUMENTS OPTIQUES. (FRA)	RADIACIÓN LÁSER DE CLASE 1M VISIBLE Y/O INVISIBLE CUANDO ESTÁ ABIERTO. NO MIRAR DIRECTAMENTE CON INSTRUMENTAL ÓPTICO. (ESP)	SYNLIG OCH/ELLER OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, KLASS 1M, NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN MED OPTISKA INSTRUMENT. (SWE)	ここを開くと可視及び/または不可視のクラス1M レーザー放射が出ます。 光学器具で直接見ないでください。 (JPN)	VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS II LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM. FDA 21 CFR (ENG)

[European Union only]

Warning:

If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.

Caution on volume setting:

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

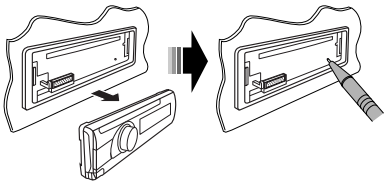
For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

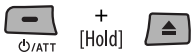
If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

How to reset your unit



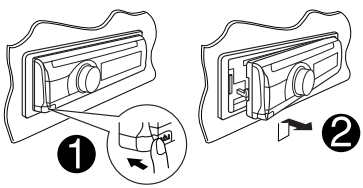
- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased (except the registered Bluetooth device, see page 10).*

How to forcibly eject a disc

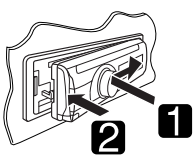


- *Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.*
- *If this does not work, reset your unit.*

Detaching the control panel



Attaching the control panel



CONTENTS

OPERATIONS

Basic operations 4
- Using the control panel 4
- Using the remote controller (RM-RK50) 5

Preparation 7
Listening to the radio 8
Disc operations 9

EXTERNAL DEVICES

Using the Bluetooth® devices 10
- Using the Bluetooth cellular phone 12
- Using the Bluetooth audio player 13

Listening to the CD changer 14
Listening to the iPod 15
Listening to the other external components 16

SETTINGS

Selecting a preset sound mode 17
Title assignment 18
Bluetooth settings 19
Menu operations 20
Color settings 23

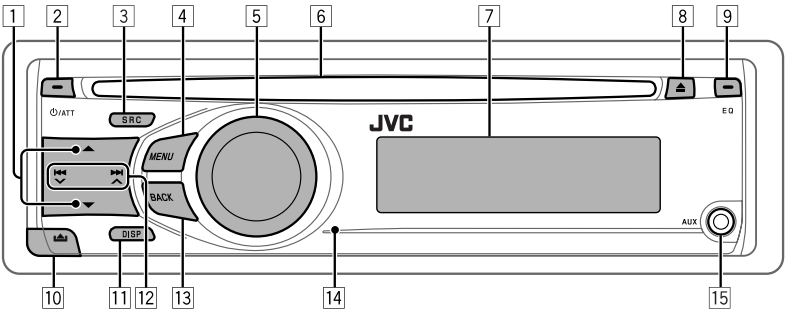
REFERENCES

More about this unit 24
Troubleshooting 27
Maintenance 31
Specifications 32

ENGLISH

Basic operations

Using the control panel



1 • **FM/AM**: Select preset station.
  • **CD/CD-CH**: Select folder.
  • **IPOD**: Enter the main menu/Pause playback/ Confirm selection.
  • **BT-PHONE/BT-AUDIO**: Enter/go back to previous Bluetooth menu.

2 • Turn on the power.
  • Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).
  • Turn off the power [Hold].

3 Select the source.
FM → **AM***1 → **CD***2 → **CD-CH***2/**IPOD***2 (or **EXT INPUT**) → **BT-PHONE***2 → **BT-AUDIO***2 → **AUX IN***1 → (back to the beginning)

4 • Enter list operations.
  • Enter Menu setting [Hold].

5 • Control the volume or selection [Turn].*3
  • Confirm the selection [Press].*3
  • **FM**: Enter SSM preset mode [Hold].*3
  • **CD/CD-CH/IPOD**: Enter playback mode [Hold].*3

6 Loading slot

7 Display window

8 Eject disc.

9 Select the sound mode.

10 Detach the panel.

11 Change the display information.

12 • **FM/AM**: Search for station.
  • **CD/CD-CH**: Select track.
  • **IPOD**: Select track.
  • **BT-PHONE/BT-AUDIO**: Select setting item/ registered device.

13 Return to the previous menu.

14 Remote sensor

15 AUX (auxiliary) input jack

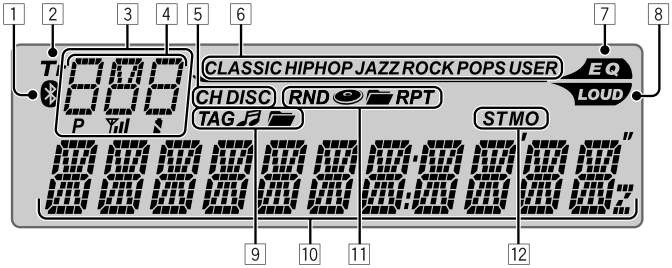
*1 *You cannot select these sources if they were disabled in the Menu (see "Menu operations" on page 22).*

*2 *You cannot select these sources if they are not ready or not connected.*

*3 *Also known as "Control dial" in this manual.*

You can change the display and button illumination (see "COLOR" on page 21).

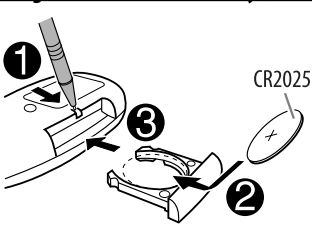
Display window



1 Bluetooth indicator
2 Tr (track) indicator
3 Status of Bluetooth device
(Device number, [P: 1 – 5]; signal strength, [: 0 – 3]*; battery reminder, [: 0 – 3]*)
* *As the number increases, the signal/battery power becomes stronger.*
4 Source display / Track number / Folder number / Time countdown indicator
5 Playback source indicators—CH (CD changer), DISC
6 Sound mode indicators—CLASSIC, HIP HOP, JAZZ, ROCK, POPS, USER
7 EQ (equalizer) indicator
8 LOUD (loudness) indicator
9 Disc information indicators—
TAG (Tag information), (track/file), (folder)
10 Main display
11 Playback mode / item indicators—RND (random), (disc), (folder), RPT (repeat)
12 Tuner reception indicators—ST (stereo), MO (monaural)

Using the remote controller (RM-RK50)

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)



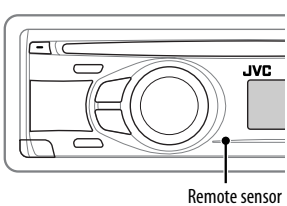
Caution:

- Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.
- Battery shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire, or the like.

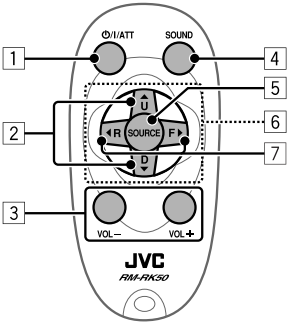
If the effectiveness of the remote controller decreases, replace the battery.

Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).



Continued on the next page



1 • Turns the power on if pressed briefly or attenuates the sound when the power is on.
  • Turns the power off if pressed and held.

2 • Changes the preset stations.
  • Changes the folder of the MP3/WMA.
  • While playing an MP3 disc on an MP3-compatible CD changer:
    – Changes the disc if pressed briefly.
    – Changes the folder if pressed and held.
  • While listening to an Apple iPod:
    – Pauses or resumes playback with D ▼.
    – Enters the main menu with ▲ U. (Now ▲ U/D ▼/◄ R/F ► work as the menu selecting buttons.)*

* ▲ U : *Returns to the previous menu.*
D ▼ : *Confirms the selection.*

3 Adjusts the volume level.

4 Selects the sound mode.

5 Selects the source.

6 For Bluetooth cellular phone:
  – Answers calls if pressed briefly.
  – Rejects calls if pressed and held.

7 • Searches for stations if pressed briefly.
  • Fast-forwards or reverses the track if pressed and held.
  • Changes the tracks if pressed briefly.
  • While listening to an iPod (in menu selecting mode):
    – Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press D ▼ to confirm the selection.)
    – Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.
  • Reverse skip/forward skip for Bluetooth audio.

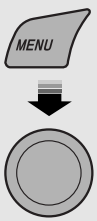
Warning (to prevent accidents and damage):

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent.
- Do not leave the remote controller in a place (such as dashboards) exposed to direct sunlight for a long time.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach.
- Do not recharge, short, disassemble, heat the battery, or dispose of it in a fire.
- Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
- Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
- Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.

Preparation

Cancel the display demonstration and set the clock

• See also page 20.

1		**Turn on the power.**
2		**Cancel the display demonstrations** Select "DEMO," then "DEMO OFF." **Set the clock** Select "CLOCK" → "CLOCK SET." Adjust the hour, then press control dial once to proceed to adjust the minute. • To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

DISP	When the power is turned off: Check the current clock time when "CLOCK DISP" is set to "CLOCK OFF," (see page 20) When the power is turned on: Change the display information of the current source
FM/AM	Station name*1 → Frequency → Clock → (back to the beginning)
CD/CD-CH	Audio CD/CD Text: Disc title/performer*2 → Track title*2 → Current track number with the elapsed playing time → Current track number with the clock time → (back to the beginning) MP3/WMA: Album name/performer (folder name)*3 → Track title (file name)*3 → Current track number with the elapsed playing time → Current track number with the clock time → (back to the beginning)
IPOD	Folder name → Track name → Current track number with the elapsed playing time → Current track number with the clock time → (back to the beginning)

*1 *If no title is assigned to a station, "NO NAME" appears. To assign a title to a station, see page 18.*

*2 *If the current disc is an audio CD, "NO NAME" appears.*

*3 *If an MP3/WMA file does not have Tag information or "TAG DISPLAY" is set to "TAG OFF" (see page 20), folder name and file name appear.*

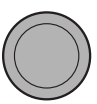
Listening to the radio

1	SRC	**Select "FM" or "AM."**
2		**Search for a station to listen—Auto Search.** Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until "M" flashes on the display, then press it repeatedly. • When receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength, "ST" lights up on the display.

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

• See also page 21.

[Hold]



[Turn] → [Press]

Select "TUNER" → "MONO" → "MONO ON"

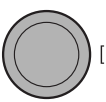
Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.
• "MO" lights up on the display.

To restore the stereo effect, repeat the same procedure to select "MONO OFF." The MO indicator goes off.

FM station automatic presetting —SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

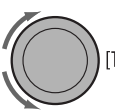
You can preset up to 18 stations for FM.

1 **While listening to a station...**



[Hold]

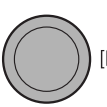
2 **Select the preset number range you want to store.**



[Turn]

SSM 01–06 ◄► SSM 07–12 ◄► SSM 13–18

3



[Press]

Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically.

To preset other 6 stations, repeat from step **1** again.

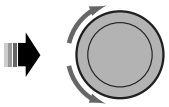
Manual presetting (FM/AM)

You can preset up to 18 stations for FM and 6 stations for AM.

Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.50 MHz into preset number "04."

1

2 **Select preset number "04."**



[Turn]

3

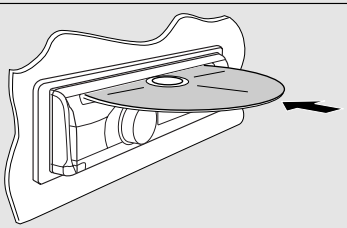
[Hold]

Selecting preset station

or

[Turn] → [Press]

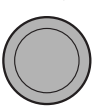
Disc operations

1	⏻/ATT	**Turn on the power.**
2		**Insert a disc.** All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

Stop playing and ejecting the disc

- "NO DISC" appears. Press SRC to listen to another playback source.

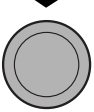
Prohibiting disc ejection



\+ [Hold]

To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure.

Selecting a track/folder



[Turn] → [Press]

- For MP3/WMA discs, select the desired folder, then the desired track by performing the control dial.
- To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

Continued on the next page

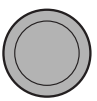
Pressing (or holding) the following buttons allows you to...

	MP3/WMA: Select folder
	[Press] Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track

Selecting the playback modes

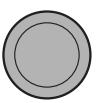
You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time.

1



[Hold]

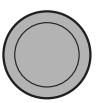
2



[Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT ↔ RANDOM

3



[Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT		
TRACK RPT	:	Repeats current track
FOLDER RPT	:	MP3/WMA: Repeats current folder
RANDOM		
FOLDER RND	:	MP3/WMA: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders
ALL RND	:	Randomly plays all tracks

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "**RPT OFF**" or "**RND OFF**."
- To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

Using the Bluetooth® devices

For Bluetooth operations, it is required to connect the **Bluetooth adapter** (KS-BTA200) (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- Refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth adapter and the Bluetooth device.
- Refer to the list (included in the box) to check the countries where you may use the Bluetooth® function.

To use a Bluetooth device through the unit ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO") for the first time, you need to establish Bluetooth wireless connection between the unit and the device.

- Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit even if you reset your unit. Up to five devices can be registered in total.
- Only one device can be connected at a time for each source ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO").

Registering a Bluetooth device

Registration (Pairing) methods

Use either of the following items in the Bluetooth menu to register and establish the connection with a device.

- Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO" as the source to operate the Bluetooth menu.

OPEN	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the Bluetooth device.
SEARCH	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the unit.

Registering using "OPEN"

Preparation: Operate the device to turn on its Bluetooth function.

1 **Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."**

SRC

2 **Select "NEW DEVICE."**

3 **Select "OPEN."**

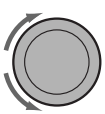
4 **Enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number) code to the unit.**

- You can enter any number you like (1-digit to 16-digit number). [Initial: 0000]

* *Some devices have their own PIN code. Enter the specified PIN code to the unit.*

1 Move to the next (or previous) number position.

2 Select a number.



[Turn]

3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 until you finish entering a PIN code.

4 Confirm the entry.

"OPEN.." flashes on the display.

5 **Use the Bluetooth device to search and connect.**

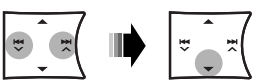
On the device to be connected, enter the same PIN code you have just entered for this unit.
"CONNECTED" appears on the display.
Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

The device remains registered even after you disconnect the device. Use "CONNECT" (or activate "AUTO CNNCT") to connect the same device from next time on. (See the following and page 19.)

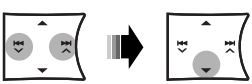
Connecting a device

Perform steps **1** and **2** on left column, then...

1 • **Select "SEARCH" to search for available devices.**
The unit searches and displays the list of the available devices. If no available device is detected, "UNFOUND" appears.
• **Select "SPECIAL" to connect a special device.**
The unit displays the list of the preset devices.



2 **Select a device you want to connect.**



3 • **For available devices...**
Enter the specific PIN code of the device to the unit.
Refer to the instructions supplied with the device to check the PIN code.
Use the Bluetooth device to connect.
Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.
• **For special device...**
Use "OPEN" or "SEARCH" to connect.

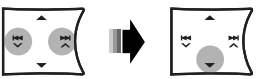
Continued on the next page

Connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device

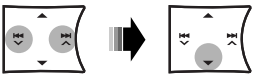
1 **Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."**

SRC

2 **Select a registered device you want to connect/disconnect/delete.**



3 • **Select "CONNECT" or "DISCONNECT" to connect/disconnect the selected device.**
• **Select "DELETE," then "YES" to delete the selected device.**



You can set the unit to connect the Bluetooth device automatically when the unit is turned on. (See "AUTO CNNCT" on page 19.)

Using the Bluetooth cellular phone

1	SRC	**Select "BT-PHONE."**
2		**Enter the Bluetooth menu.**
3	—	**Make a call or setting using the Bluetooth setting menu. (See the following and page 19.)**

When a call comes in....

The source is automatically changed to "BT-PHONE."
• The display will flash in blue (see "RING COLOR" on page 21 for setting.)

When "AUTO ANSWER" is activated....

The unit answers the incoming calls automatically, see page 19.
• When "AUTO ANSWER" is deactivated, press any button (except ⏻/ATT/⏏/▲) to answer the incoming call.
• You can adjust the microphone volume level (see page 19).

To end the call

Hold any button (except ⏻/ATT/⏏/▲).

When a text message comes in....

If the cellular phone is compatible with text message (notified through JVC Bluetooth adapter) and "MSG INFO" (message info) is set to "AUTO" (see page 19), the unit rings to inform you of the message arrival.
• "RCV MESSAGE" (receiving message) appears on the display and the display illuminate in blue (see "RING COLOR" on page 21 for setting).

Making a call

You can make a call using the following methods.

Select "BT-PHONE," then follow the following steps to make a call:
• To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

1 Enter the "DIAL" menu.

2 Select a calling method.

PHONE BOOK ↔ MISSED ↔ NUMBER ↔ RECEIVED ↔ REDIAL ↔ VOICE DIAL

Call history:

1 Select a call history (REDIAL*, RECEIVED*, MISSED*).

2 Then select a name (if it is acquired) or phone number.

Phone book:

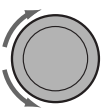
1 Select "PHONE BOOK*".
The list of phone number appears.

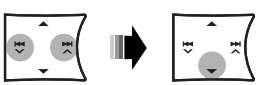
2 Select a name from the list.

Direct dialing:

1 Select "NUMBER."

2 Enter the phone number.

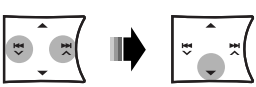

[Turn]



* *Displays only when your cellular phone is equipped with these functions and is compatible with this unit.*

Voice dialing:

1 Select "VOICE DIAL."



"SAY NAME" appears on the display.

2 Speak the name you want to call.

- If your cellular phone does not support the voice recognition system, "ERROR" appears on the display.
- Using voice tags may be difficult in a noisy environment or during an emergency.

Using the Bluetooth audio player

SRC	**Select "BT-AUDIO."** If playback does not start, operate the Bluetooth audio player to start playback. • Operate the Bluetooth audio player to pause (if playback does not pause when you change the source).

	Reverse skip/forward skip
	Pause/start playback* * Operation may be different according to the connected Bluetooth audio player.
	Enter setting menu (Device list)

- Refer also to page 12 for connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device.

Bluetooth Information:
If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/> (English website only)

Listening to the CD changer

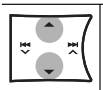
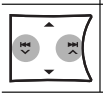
It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer (separately purchased) with your unit. You can connect a CD changer to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

- You can only play conventional CDs (including CD Text) and MP3 discs.

Preparation: Make sure "CH / IPOD" is selected in the "SRC SELECT" → "EXT IN" setting, see page 22.

1	SRC	**Select "CD-CH."**
2	MENU	**Enter the list mode.**
3	[Turn] → [Press]	**Select a disc, folder, then the track.** Playback starts automatically. • If there is no disc on the selected tray, the unit beeps.

- To select a desired folder/track to start playback (for MP3 discs), repeat step **2** and **3** above until the desired folder/track is selected. The selection always start from disc number first.

	MP3: Select folders
	[Press] Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track

Selecting the playback modes

1 [Hold]

2 [Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT ↔ RANDOM

3 [Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT		
TRACK RPT	:	Repeats current track
FOLDER RPT	:	MP3: Repeats all tracks of current folder
DISC RPT	:	Repeats all tracks of the current disc
RANDOM		
FOLDER RND	:	MP3: Randomly plays all tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder
DISC RND	:	Randomly plays all tracks of current disc
ALL RND	:	Randomly plays all tracks of the discs in the magazine

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "**RPT OFF**" or "**RND OFF**."
- To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

Listening to the iPod

Before operating, connect the **Interface adapter for iPod**, KS-PD100 (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

Preparation: Make sure "CH / IPOD" is selected in the "SRC SELECT" → "EXT IN" setting, see page 22.

1	SRC	**Select "IPOD."**
2		**Select a song.** Playback starts automatically.

Selecting a track from the menu

1 Enter the main menu.

This mode will be canceled if no operations are done for about 5 seconds.

2 Select the desired menu.

PLAYLISTS ↔ ARTISTS ↔ ALBUMS ↔ SONGS ↔ GENRES ↔ COMPOSERS ↔ (back to the beginning)

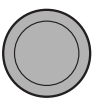
3 Confirm the selection.

- To return to the previous menu, press ▲.
- If a track is selected, playback starts automatically.

	Pause playback • To resume playback, press the button again.
	[Press] Select tracks [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track

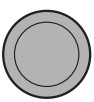
Selecting the playback modes

1



[Hold]

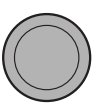
2



[Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT ↔ RANDOM

3



[Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT		
ONE RPT	:	Functions the same as "Repeat One" of the iPod.
ALL RPT	:	Functions the same as "Repeat All" of the iPod.
RANDOM		
ALBUM RND*	:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums" of the iPod.
SONG RND	:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs" of the iPod.

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "**RPT OFF**" or "**RND OFF**."
- To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

** Functions only if you select "ALL" in "ALBUMS" of the main "MENU."*

Listening to the other external components

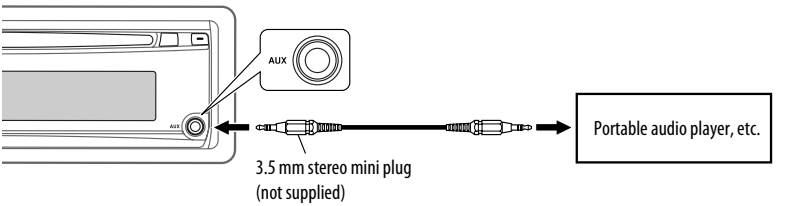
You can connect an external component to:

- CD changer jack on the rear of this unit using the following adapters:
  – **Line Input Adapter**, KS-U57 (separately purchsed)
  – **AUX Input Adapter**, KS-U58 (separately purchsed)
  Preparation: Make sure "EXT INPUT" is selected in the "SRC SELECT" → "EXT IN" setting, see page 22.

- AUX (auxiliary) input jack on the control panel.
  Preparation: Make sure "AUX ON" is selected in the "SRC SELECT" → "AUX IN" setting, see page 22.

1	SRC	**Select "EXT INPUT" or "AUX IN."**
2	—	**Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**
3	+ [Turn] −	**Adjust the volume.**
4	—	**Adjust the sound as you want (see pages 17 and 18).**

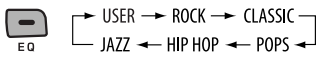
Connecting an external component to the AUX input jack



Selecting a preset sound mode

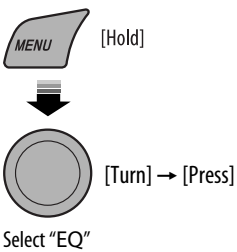
You can select a preset sound mode suitable to the music genre.

- See also page 20 ("EQ").



or

Selecting from Menu.



Select "EQ"

Preset value setting for each sound mode

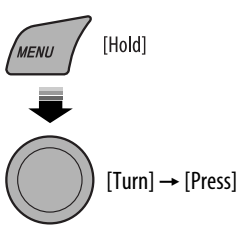
Sound mode	Preset value									
	BASS			MIDDLE			TREBLE			LOUD (loudness)
	Freq.	Level	Q	Freq.	Level	Q	Freq.	Level	Q	
USER	60 Hz	00	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.0	10.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	OFF
ROCK	100 Hz	+03	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	Q1.25	
CLASSIC	80 Hz	+01	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	Q1.25	
POPS	100 Hz	+02	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	+01	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	Q1.25	
HIP HOP	60 Hz	+04	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	–02	Q1.0	10.0 kHz	+01	Q1.25	
JAZZ	80 Hz	+03	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	Q1.25	

Freq.: Frequency Q: Q-slope

Storing your own sound mode

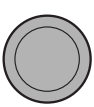
You can store your own adjustments in memory.

1 Select "USER" for "EQ."



Select "EQ" → "USER"

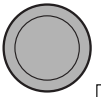
2 While "USER" is shown on the display...



- If no operation is done for about 30 seconds, the operation will be canceled.

Continued on the next page

3 Select a tone.


[Turn] → [Press]

BASS ↔ MIDDLE ↔ TREBLE

4 Adjust the sound elements of the selected tone.

[Turn] → [Press]

1 Adjust the frequency.
2 Adjust the level.
3 Adjust the Q-slope.

Sound elements	Range/selectable items		
	BASS	MIDDLE	TREBLE
Frequency	60 Hz 80 Hz 100 Hz 120 Hz	500 Hz 1.0 kHz 1.5 kHz 2.5 kHz	7.5 kHz 10.0 kHz 12.5 kHz 15.0 kHz
Level	–06 to +06	–06 to +06	–06 to +06
Q	Q0.5 Q1.0 Q1.5 Q2.0	Q0.75 Q1.0 Q1.25 Q1.5	Q0.75 Q1.25

5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to adjust other sound characteristics.
The adjustment made will be stored automatically.

Title assignment

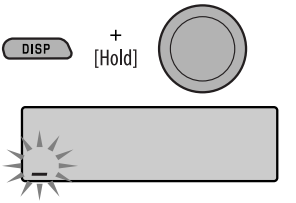
You can assign titles to 30 station frequencies (FM and AM) using 8 characters (maximum) for each title.

1 Select "FM" or "AM."

SRC

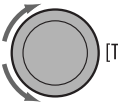
2 Show the title entry screen.

DISP + [Hold]



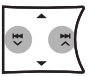
3 Assign a title.

1 Select a character.


[Turn]

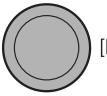
A	B	C	D	E	F	G	
H	I	J	K	L	M	N	
O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	
V	W	X	Y	Z	0	1	
2	3	4	5	6	7	8	
9	–	/	<	>	space		

2 Move to the next (or previous) character position.



3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 until you finish entering the title.

4 Finish the procedure.


[Press]

To erase the entire title

In step **2** above...

DISP [Hold] → [Press]

Bluetooth settings

You can change the settings listed on the right column according to your preference.

1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."

2 Enter the Bluetooth menu.

3 Select "SETTINGS."

4 Select a setting item.

*1 *Appears only when a Bluetooth phone is connected.*

*2 *Appears only when a Bluetooth phone is connected and it is compatible with text message (notified through JVC Bluetooth adapter).*

*3 *Bluetooth Audio: Shows only "Version."*

5 Change the setting accordingly.

Setting menu (__: Initial)

AUTO CNNCT (connect)

When the unit is turned on, the connection is established automatically with...

OFF: No Bluetooth device.

LAST: The last connected Bluetooth device.

ORDER: The available registered Bluetooth device found at first.

AUTO ANSWER

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

ON: The unit answers the incoming calls automatically.

OFF: The unit does not answer the calls automatically. Answer the calls manually.

REJECT: The unit rejects all incoming calls.

MSG INFO (message info)

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

AUTOMATIC: The unit informs you of the arrival of a message by ringing and displaying "RCV MESSAGE" (receiving message).
- The display illuminate in blue (see "RING COLOR" on page 21).

MANUAL: The unit does not inform you of the arrival of a message.

MIC SETTING (microphone setting)

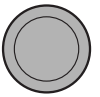
Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

Adjust microphone volume connected to the Bluetooth adapter, [LEVEL 01/02/03].

VERSION

The Bluetooth software and hardware versions are shown.

Menu operations

1	2	3
[Hold]	 [Turn] → [Press]	**Repeat step 2 if necessary.** • To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

Initial: **Underlined**

Category	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
DEMO	**DEMO** Display demonstration	• **DEMO ON** : Display demonstration will be activated automatically if no operation is done for about 20 seconds, [7]. • **DEMO OFF** : Cancels.
CLOCK	**CLOCK DISP***1 Clock display	• **CLOCK ON** : Clock time is shown on the display at all times when the power is turned off. • **CLOCK OFF** : Cancels; pressing DISP will show the clock time for about 5 seconds when the power is turned off, [7].
	CLOCK SET Clock setting	: Adjust the hour, then the minute, [7]. [Initial: 1:00]
EQ	**EQ** Equalizer	: Select a preset sound mode suitable to the music genre. **USER, ROCK, CLASSIC, POPS, HIP HOP, JAZZ**
DISPLAY	**DIMMER** Dimmer	• **DIMMER ON** : Dims the display and button illumination. • **DIMMER OFF** : Cancels.
	SCROLL*2 Scroll	• **SCROLL ONCE** : Scrolls the displayed information once. • **SCROLL AUTO** : Repeats scrolling (at 5-second intervals). • **SCROLL OFF** : Cancels. Pressing DISP for more than one second can scroll the display regardless of the setting.
	TAG DISPLAY Tag display	• **TAG ON** : Shows the Tag information while playing MP3/WMA tracks. • **TAG OFF** : Cancels.

*1 *If the power supply is not interrupted by turning off the ignition key of your car, it is recommended to select "*CLOCK OFF*" to save the car's battery.*

*2 *Some characters or symbols will not be shown correctly (or will be blanked) on the display.*

Category	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
TUNER	**MONO***3 Monaural mode	• **MONO ON** : Activate monaural mode to improve FM reception, but stereo effect will be lost, [8]. • **MONO OFF** : Restore the stereo effect.
	IF BAND Intermediate frequency band	• **AUTO** : Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) • **WIDE** : Subject to interference noises from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
COLOR	**COLOR 01 – COLOR 29, USER**	: Select one of the preset or user color for display and button (except **EQ**/⏻/ATT/⏏) illumination. (See also page 23 for USER color setting.)
MENU COLOR	**MENU COLOR** Menu color	• **OFF** : Cancels. • **ON** : Changes the display and button (except **EQ**/⏻/ATT/⏏) illumination during menu, list search and playback mode operations.
RING COLOR	**RING COLOR***4 Ring color	• **OFF** : Cancels. • **ON** : When a call comes in, the display will flash in blue. • The display will change to the original color when the call is answered or the incoming call stops. When the unit receive a text message, the display only illuminate in blue.
AUDIO	**FADER***5 Fader	**R06 – F06** : Adjust the front and rear speaker output balance. [Initial: 00]
	BALANCE*6 Balance	**L06 – R06** : Adjust the left and right speaker output balance. [Initial: 00]
	LOUD Loudness	• **LOUD OFF** : Cancels. • **LOUD ON** : Boost low and high frequencies to produce a well-balanced sound at a low volume level.
	VOL ADJUST Volume adjust	**VOL ADJ –05** — **VOL ADJ +05** [Initial: VOL ADJ 00] : Preset the volume adjustment level of each source (except FM), compared to the FM volume level. The volume level will automatically increase or decrease when you change the source. • Before making an adjustment, select the source you want to adjust. • "VOL ADJ FIX" appears on the display if "FM" is selected as the source.

*3 *Displayed only when the source is "FM."*

*4 *Displayed only when Bluetooth adapter, KS-BTA200 is connected.*

*5 *If you are using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to "00."*

*6 *This adjustment will not affect the subwoofer output.*

Continued on the next page

Category	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
AUDIO	**L/O MODE** Line output mode	• **SUB.W** : Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting a subwoofer (through an external amplifier). • **REAR** : Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting the speakers (through an external amplifier).
	SUB.W FREQ*7 Subwoofer cutoff frequency	• **LOW** : Frequencies lower than 72 Hz are sent to the subwoofer. • **MID** : Frequencies lower than 111 Hz are sent to the subwoofer. • **HIGH** : Frequencies lower than 157 Hz are sent to the subwoofer.
	SUB.W LEVEL*7 Subwoofer level	**SUB.W 00 — SUB.W 08** : Adjust the subwoofer output level. [Initial: SUB.W 04]
	BEEP Keypress tone	• **BEEP OFF** : Deactivates the keypress tone. • **BEEP ON** : Activates the keypress tone.
	AMP GAIN*8 Amplifier gain control	• **LOW POWER** : VOLUME 00 – VOLUME 30 (Select if the maximum power of each speaker is less than 50 W to prevent damaging the speaker.) • **HIGH POWER** : VOLUME 00 – VOLUME 50
SRC SELECT	**AM***9 AM station	• **AM OFF** : Disable "AM" in source selection. • **AM ON** : Enable "AM" in source selection, [4].
	EXT IN*10 External input	• **CH / IPOD** : To use a JVC CD changer, [14], or an Apple iPod, [15]. • **EXT INPUT** : To connect portable audio player to the CD changer jack, [16].
	AUX IN*11 Auxiliary input	• **AUX OFF** : Disable "AUX IN" in source selection. • **AUX ON** : Enable "AUX IN" in source selection, [4].

*7 *Displayed only when "*L/O MODE*" is set to "*SUB.W.*"*

*8 *The volume level automatically changes to "VOLUME 30" if you change to "*LOW POWER*" with the volume level set higher than "VOLUME 30."*

*9 *Displayed only when any source other than "AM" is selected.*

*10 *Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—FM, AM, CD, Bluetooth, or AUX IN.*

*11 *Displayed only when any source other than "AUX IN" is selected.*

Color settings

Creating your own color —USER Color

You can create your own colors—"DAY COLOR" or "NIGHT COLOR."

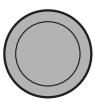
DAY COLOR: Used when "DIMMER" is set to "DIMMER OFF."

NIGHT COLOR: Used when "DIMMER" is set to "DIMMER ON."

1

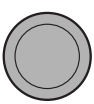
[Hold]

2 **Select "COLOR" → "USER."**



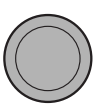
[Turn] → [Press]

3 **While "USER" is shown on the display...**



[Hold]

4



[Turn] → [Press]

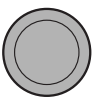
DAY COLOR ↔ NIGHT COLOR

5 **Select a primary color.**

[Turn] → [Press]

RED ↔ GREEN ↔ BLUE

6 **Adjust the level (00 to 31) of the selected primary color.**



[Turn] → [Press]

7 **Repeat steps 5 and 6 to adjust other primary colors.**

8 **Exit from the setting.**

- If no operation is done for about 30 seconds, the operation will be canceled.

More about this unit

Basic operations

Turning on the power

- By pressing SRC button on the unit, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback also starts.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a track, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously next time you turn on the power.

General

- If you change the source while listening to a disc, playback stops.
  Next time you select "CD" as the playback source, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously.
- After ejecting a disc, "NO DISC" appears and you cannot operate some of the buttons. Insert another disc or press SRC to select another playback source.
- If no operation is done for about 30 seconds after pressing MENU button, the operation will be canceled.

Tuner operations

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
  – All previously stored stations are erased and the stations are stored anew.
  – When SSM is over, the station stored in the lowest preset number will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, the previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.

Disc operations

Caution for DualDisc playback

- The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

General

- This unit has been designed to reproduce CDs/CD Texts, and CD-Rs (Recordable)/CD-RWs (Rewritable) in audio CD (CD-DA), MP3 and WMA formats.
- When a disc is inserted upside down, "PLEASE" and "EJECT" appear alternately on the display. Press ⏏ to eject the disc.
- MP3 and WMA "tracks" (words "file" and "track" are used interchangeably) are recorded in "folders."
- While fast-forwarding or reversing on an MP3 or WMA disc, you can only hear intermittent sounds.

Playing a CD-R or CD-RW

- Use only "finalized" CD-Rs or CD-RWs.
- This unit can only play back files of the same type as those detected first if a disc includes both audio CD (CD-DA) files and MP3/WMA files.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some CD-Rs or CD-RWs may not play back on this unit because of their disc characteristics, or for the following reasons:
  – Discs are dirty or scratched.
  – Moisture condensation has occurred on the lens inside the unit.
  – The pickup lens inside the unit is dirty.
  – The files on the CD-R/CD-RW are written using the "Packet Write" method.
  – There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stained, scratched, warped, etc.).

- CD-RWs may require a longer readout time since the reflectance of CD-RWs is lower than that of regular CDs.
- Do not use the following CD-Rs or CD-RWs:
  – Discs with stickers, labels, or a protective seal stuck to the surface.
  – Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.

  Using these discs under high temperature or high humidity may cause malfunctions or damage to the unit.

Playing an MP3/WMA disc

- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files with the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3 files and for WMA files.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files meeting the conditions below:
  – Bit rate: 8 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency:
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG-1)
    24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG-2)
  – Disc format: ISO 9660 Level 1/Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name
- The maximum number of characters for file/folder names vary depending on the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3> or <.wma>).
  – ISO 9660 Level 1: up to 12 characters
  – ISO 9660 Level 2: up to 31 characters
  – Romeo: up to 128 characters
  – Joliet: up to 64 characters
  – Windows long file name: up to 128 characters
- This unit can recognize a total of 512 files, 255 folders, and 8 hierarchical levels.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).

  Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in the elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. In particular, this difference becomes noticeable after performing the search function.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded in MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded in an inappropriate format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded in lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, it is automatically inserted into the loading slot again to protect it from dust. Playback starts automatically.

Bluetooth operations

General

- While driving, do not perform complicated operation such as dialing the numbers, using phone book, etc. When you perform these operations, stop your car in a safe place.
- Some Bluetooth devices may not be connected to this unit depending on the Bluetooth version of the device.
- This unit may not work for some Bluetooth devices.
- Connecting condition may vary depending on the circumstances around you.
- When the unit is turned off, the device is disconnected.

Warning messages for Bluetooth operations

- **ERROR CNNCT** (Error Connection):
  The device is registered but the connection has failed. Use "CONNECT" to connect the device again. (See page 12.)

Continued on the next page

- **ERROR**
  Try the operation again. If "ERROR" appears again, check if the device supports the function you have tried.
- **UNFOUND**
  No available Bluetooth device is detected by "SEARCH."
- **LOADING**
  The unit is updating the phone book*.
  * *Displays only when your cellular phone is equipped with these functions and is compatible with this unit.*
- **PLEASE WAIT**
  The unit is preparing to use the Bluetooth function. If the message does not disappear, turn off and turn on the unit, then connect the device again (or reset the unit).
- **RESET 8**
  Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

iPod

- You can control the following types of iPods through the interface adapter.
  – iPod with dock connector (3rd Generation)
  – iPod with Click Wheel (4th Generation)
  – iPod mini
  – iPod photo
  – iPod nano*1
  – iPod video (5th Generation)*2
  – iPod classic 2007*2
  – iPod nano (3rd Generation)*2
  *1 *When you connect the iPod nano to the interface adapter, be sure to disconnect the headphones; otherwise, no sound is heard.*
  *2 *It is not possible to browse video files on the "Videos" menu.*
- If the iPod does not play correctly, please update your iPod software to the latest version. For details about updating your iPod, visit <http://www.apple.com>.
- When you turn on this unit, the iPod is charged through this unit.
- While the iPod is connected, all operations from the iPod are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
- If the text information includes more than 11 characters, it scrolls on the display. This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:
When operating an iPod, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/> (English website only)

Title assignment

- If you try to assign titles to more than 30 station frequencies, "NAME FULL" appears. Delete unwanted titles before assignment.

Menu operations

- If you change the "AMP GAIN" setting from "HIGH POWER" to "LOW POWER" while the volume level is set higher than "VOLUME 30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "VOLUME 30."

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).
	• "AUX IN" cannot be selected.	Check the "SRC SELECT" → "AUX IN" setting (see page 22).
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually.
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the antenna firmly.
	• "AM" cannot be selected.	Check the "SRC SELECT" → "AM" setting (see page 22).
Disc playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played back. • Tracks on the CD-R/CD-RW cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized CD-R/CD-RW. • Finalize the CD-R/CD-RW with the component which you used for recording.
	• Disc can neither be played back nor ejected.	• Unlock the disc (see page 9). • Eject the disc forcibly (see page 3).
	• Disc sound is sometimes interrupted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc. • Check the cords and connections.
	• "NO DISC" appears on the display.	Insert a playable disc into the loading slot.
	• "PLEASE" and "EJECT" appear alternately on the display.	Press ⏏, then insert a disc correctly.

Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
MP3/WMA playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Use a disc with MP3/WMA tracks recorded in a format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, Level 2, Romeo, or Joliet. • Add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3 or WMA tracks.)
	• A longer readout time is required ("READING" keeps flashing on the display).	Do not use too many hierarchical levels and folders.
	• Tracks do not play back in the order you have intended them to play.	The playback order is determined when the files are recorded.
	• The elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc.
	• The correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (upper case), numbers, and a limited number of symbols.
Bluetooth*	• Bluetooth device does not detect the unit.	The unit can be connected with one Bluetooth cellular phone and one Bluetooth audio device at a time. While connecting a device, this unit cannot be detected from another device. Disconnect currently connected device and search again.
	• The unit does not detect the Bluetooth device.	• Check the Bluetooth setting of the device. • Search from the Bluetooth device. After the device detects the unit, select "OPEN" on the unit to connect the device. (See page 11.)

* *For Bluetooth operations, refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth Adapter.*

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Bluetooth	• The unit does not make pairing with the Bluetooth device.	• Enter the same PIN code for both the unit and target device. • Select the device name from "SPECIAL," then try to connect again. (See page 11.) • Try to pair/connect from the Bluetooth device.
	• Echo or noise occurs.	Adjust the microphone unit position.
	• Phone sound quality is poor.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth cellular phone. • Move the car to a place where you can get a better signal reception.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a Bluetooth audio device.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth audio device. • Disconnect the device connected for "BT-PHONE." • Turn off, then turn on the unit. • (When the sound is not yet restored,) connect the device again.
	• The connected audio device cannot be controlled.	Check whether the connected audio device supports AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile).
CD changer	• "NO DISC" appears on the display.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "NO MAGAZINE" appears on the display.	Insert the magazine.
	• "RESET 8" appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "RESET 1" – "RESET 7" appears on the display.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).

Continued on the next page

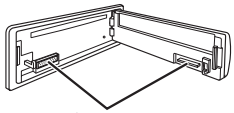
	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
iPod	• The iPod does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Update the firmware version. • Charge the battery.
	• The sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod.
	• "NO IPOD" appears on the display.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Charge the battery.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart the playback operation (see page 15).
	• No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano.	• Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano. • Update the firmware version of the iPod nano.
	• "NO FILES" appears on the display.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod.
	• "RESET 1" – "RESET 7" appears on the display.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod. Then, connect it again.
	• "RESET 8" appears on the display.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod.

- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Victor Company of Japan, Limited (JVC) is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors. To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connectors

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the unit in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the unit may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture has evaporated.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc in its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs in cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly.
If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvents (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.

To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:

Single CD (8 cm disc)

Warped disc

Sticker and sticker residue

Stick-on label

Unusual shape

C-thru Disc (semi-transparent disc)

Transparent or semi-transparent parts on its recording area

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION		
Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.
Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
Tone Control Range:	Bass:	±12 dB (60 Hz, 80 Hz, 100 Hz, 120 Hz) Q0.5, Q1.0, Q1.5, Q2.0
	Middle:	±12 dB (500 Hz, 1.0 kHz, 1.5 kHz, 2.5 kHz) Q0.75, Q1.0, Q1.25, Q1.5
	Treble:	±12 dB (7.5 kHz, 10.0 kHz, 12.5 kHz, 15.0 kHz) Q0.75, Q1.25
Frequency Response:		40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		70 dB
Line-Out Level/Impedance:		2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
Subwoofer-Out Level/Impedance:		2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
Output Impedance:		1 kΩ
Other Terminal:		AUX (auxiliary) input jack, CD changer jack, Antenna input

TUNER SECTION		
Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
	AM:	531 kHz to 1 602 kHz
FM Tuner	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 µV/75 Ω)
	50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 µV/75 Ω)
	Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
	Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
	Stereo Separation:	30 dB
AM Tuner	Sensitivity:	20 µV
	Selectivity:	35 dB

CD PLAYER SECTION	
Type:	Compact disc player
Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)
Number of Channels:	2 channels (stereo)
Frequency Response:	5 Hz to 20 000 Hz
Dynamic Range:	96 dB
Signal-to-Noise Ratio:	98 dB
Wow and Flutter:	Less than measurable limit
MP3 Decoding Format: (MPEG1/2 Audio Layer 3)	Max. Bit Rate: 320 kbps
WMA (Windows Media® Audio) Decoding Format:	Max. Bit Rate: 192 kbps

GENERAL		
Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
Grounding System:		Negative ground
Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C
Dimensions (W × H × D): (approx.)	Installation Size:	182 mm × 52 mm × 160 mm
	Panel Size:	188 mm × 58 mm × 6 mm
Mass:		1.3 kg (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

หากมีปัญหาในการใช้งาน

กรุณากดปุ่มตั้งค่าเริ่มต้นใหม่

กรุณาดูหน้าวิธีตั้งค่าเครื่องใหม่

JVC

EN, TH

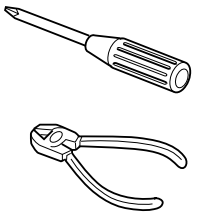
© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0808DTSMDTJEIN

KD-R406/KD-R405

Installation/Connection Manual

การติดตั้ง/คู่มือการติดตั้ง



GET0571-006A
[U/UH]

0808DTSMDTJEIN
EN, TH
© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

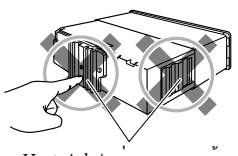
WARNINGS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with a maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8** Ω). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "AMP GAIN" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 22 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



Heat sink / แผ่นระบายความร้อน

ไทย

ชุดประกอบนี้ได้รับการออกแบบมาเพื่อใช้งานกับระบบ กระแสไฟฟ้าสายดินขั้วลบกระแสตรง **12 โวลท์ หากรถยนต์ของคุณไม่ได้ใช้ระบบนี้ ต้องใช้เครื่องแปลงกระแสไฟช่วย** ซึ่งสามารถหาซื้อได้จากร้านขายเครื่องเสียงรถยนต์ JVC

คำเตือน

เพื่อป้องกันการเกิดไฟฟ้าลัดวงจรขอแนะนำให้ปลดขั้วแบตเตอรี่ลบออกแล้วจึงต่อสายไฟก่อนติดตั้งเครื่อง

- **ตรวจสอบให้แน่ใจว่าได้เดินสายดินต่อระหว่างเครื่องกับตัวถัง รถยนต์ใหม่แล้วหลังจากติดตั้ง**

หมายเหตุ:

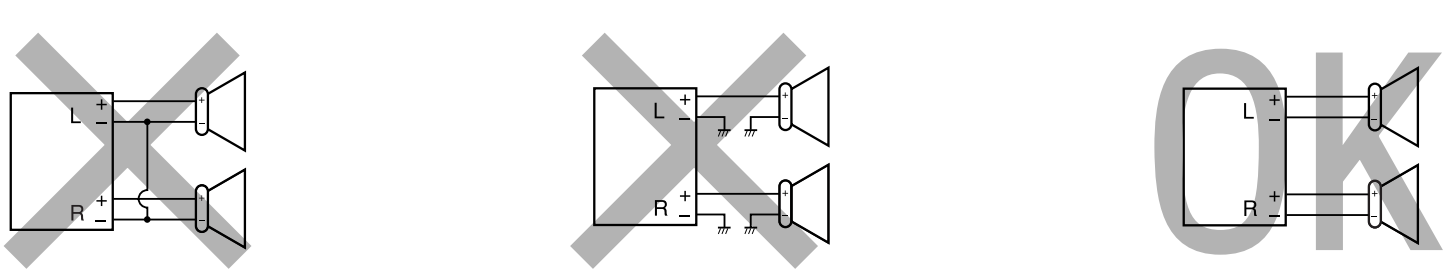
- ใช้พิกัดจำเพาะแทนฟิวส์ หากฟิวส์ขาดบ่อย ให้ปรึกษาร้า นขายเครื่องเสียงรถยนต์ JVC
- ขอแนะนำให้ต่อลำโพง ที่มีกำลังขับสูงสุดเกินกว่า 50 W (ทั้งด้านหน้าและด้านหลัง มีค่าความต้านทาน **4 Ω ถึง 8** Ω) ถ้ากำลังขับต่ำกว่า 50 W ให้เปลี่ยนค่า "AMP GAIN" เพื่อป้องกันไม่ให้ลำโพงชำรุด (ดูหน้า 22 คำแนะนำ)
- การป้องกันการลัดวงจร จะต้องพันขั้วสายตะกั่ว **ที่ไม่ใช้แล้วด้วย**เท ปพันสายไฟ
- แผ่นระบายความร้อนจะร้อนมากหลังจากใช้ ระมัดระวังอย่าไป สัมผัสเมื่อถอดชุดประกอบนี้

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

ข้อควรระวังสำหรับการต่อแหล่งจ่ายกำลังและลำโพง:

- **อย่าต่อสายตะกั่วเคเบิลกำลังของลำโพงเข้ากับแบตเตอรี่รถยนต์ มิฉะนั้น ชุดประกอบจะได้รับความเสียหายมาก**
- ก่อนที่จะต่อสายตะกั่วเคเบิลกำลังของลำโพงเข้ากับลำโพง ให้ตรวจสอบการเดินสายไฟลำโพงในรถของคุณให้เรียบร้อยเสียก่อน

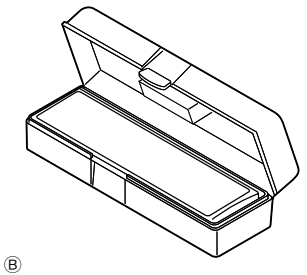


Parts list for installation and connection

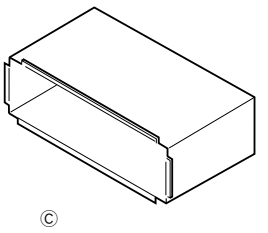
The following parts are provided for this unit. If any item is missing, consult your JVC car audio dealer immediately.

รายการส่วนประกอบสำหรับติดตั้งและเชื่อมต่อกัน

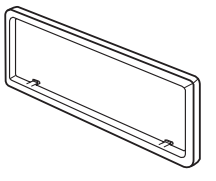
ส่วนประกอบต่อไปนี้ให้มากับชุดประกอบนี้ หากมีสิ่งใดไม่ครบ กรุณาปรึกษาตัวแทนจำหน่ายเครื่องเสียงติดรถยนต์ JVC โดยทันที



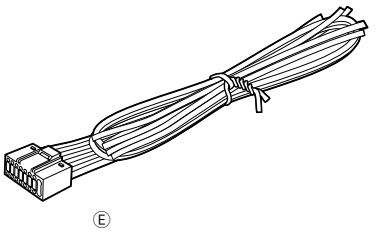
Ⓐ / Ⓑ
Hard case/Control panel
ลังบรรจุ/หน้าปัด



Ⓒ
Sleeve
ปลอกหุ้ม



Ⓓ
Trim plate
แผ่นโลหะขอบแต่ง

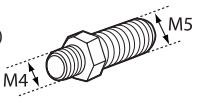


Ⓔ
Power cord
ายเคเบิลกำลัง

Ⓕ
Washer (ø5)
ประเก็นวงแหวน (ø5)

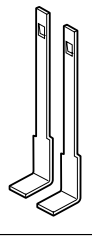
Ⓖ
Lock nut (M5)
นอตล็อค (M5)

Ⓗ
Mounting bolt (M4 × 5 mm; M5 × 12.5 mm)
สลักติด (M4 × 5 มม.; M5 × 12.5 มม.)

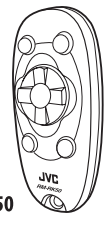


Ⓘ
Rubber cushion
ยางกันกระแทก

Ⓙ
Handles
คันบังคับ



Ⓚ
Remote controller
รีโมตคอนโทรล



RM-RK50

Ⓛ
Battery
แบตเตอร

CR2025

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

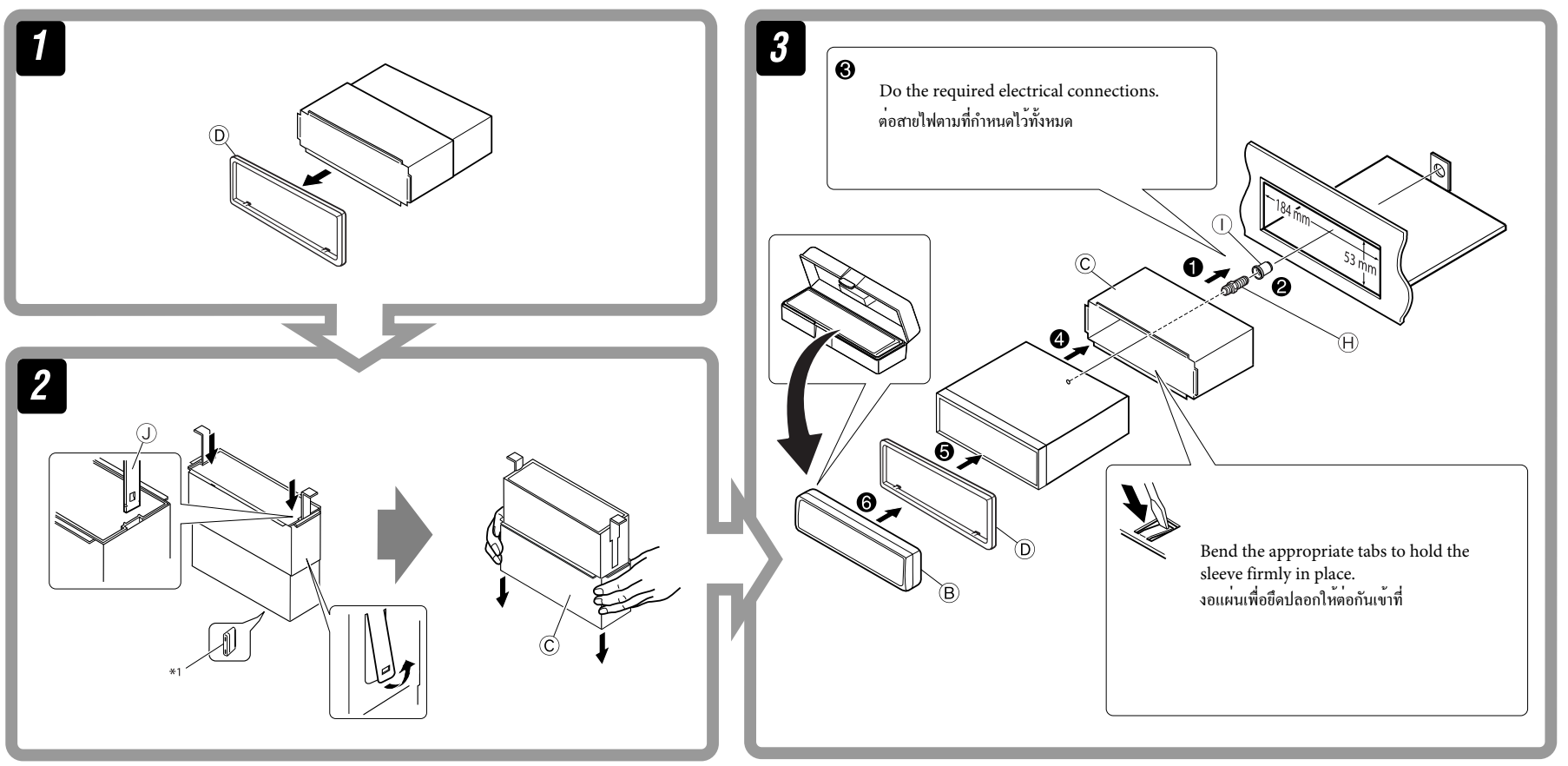
The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

การติดตั้ง (การประกอบแผงหน้าปัทม์เข้า)

ภาพตัวอย่างต่อไปนี้แสดงถึงการติดตั้งแบบทั่วไป หากคุณมีปัญหาหรือต้องการข้อมูลเกี่ยวกับชุดติดตั้ง กรุณาปรึกษากับผู้ขายเครื่องเสียงรถยนต์ JVC ของท่านหรือบริษัท

- ชุดประกอบ ถ้าคุณไม่แน่ใจว่าติดตั้งชุดประกอบนี้ถูกต้องหรือไม่ ให้หาช่างผู้เชี่ยวชาญเป็นผู้ติดตั้ง

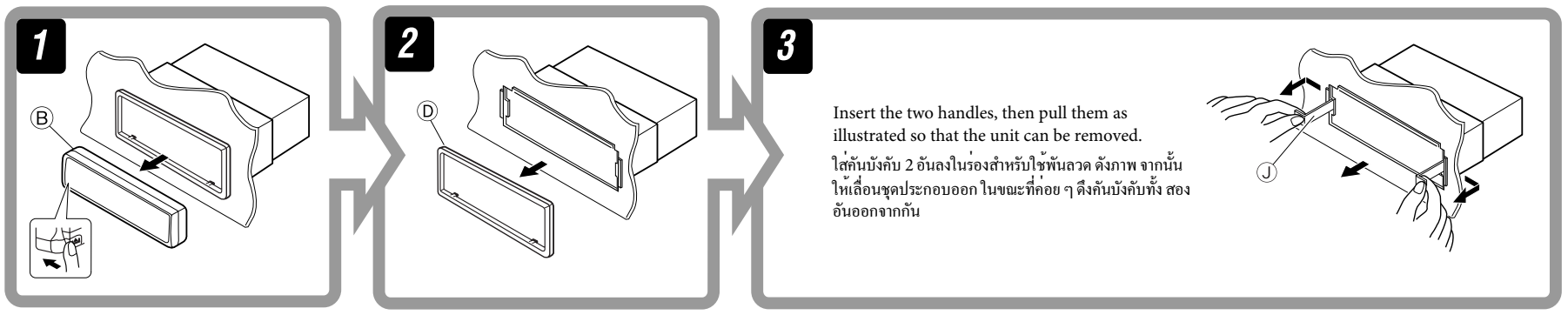


Removing the unit

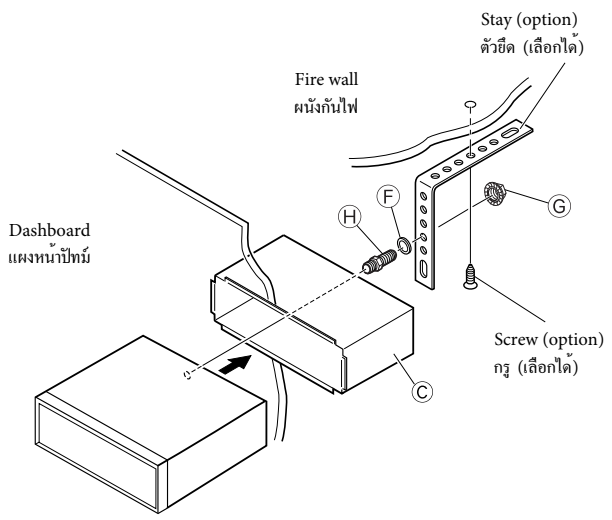
Before removing the unit, release the rear section.

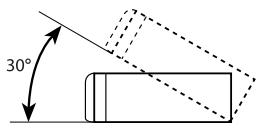
การถอดชุดประกอบ

ก่อนจะถอดชุดประกอบ ให้ปลดหน้าตัดส่วนท้ายก่อน



When using the optional stay / เมื่อใช้ตัวยึดแบบเลือกได้

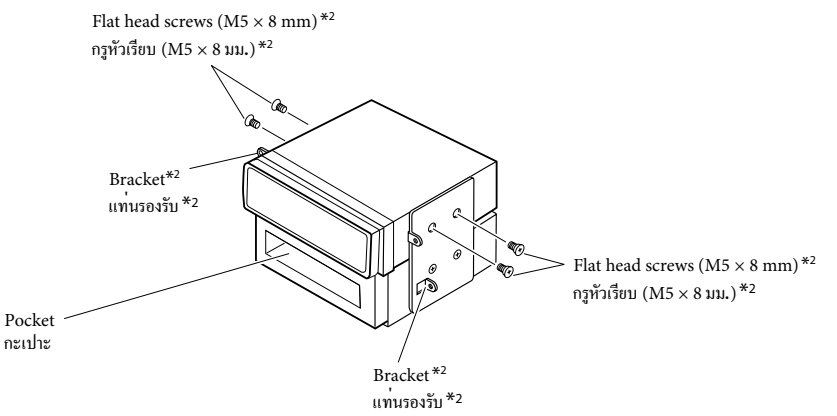




Install the unit at an angle of less than 30°.
ติดตั้งชุดประกอบที่มุมต่ำกว่า 30° องศา

When installing the unit without using the sleeve / เมื่อติดตั้งชุดประกอบโดยไม่ใช้ปลอกหุ้ม

In a Toyota car for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place.
ตัวอย่างเช่น ในรถยนต์โตโยต้า ให้ถอดวิทยุติดรถยนต์ออกก่อน แล้วจึงติดตั้งเครื่องนี้เข้าแทนที่



Note : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm-long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

หมายเหตุ : เมื่อติดตั้งชุดประกอบลงในแท่นรองรับไว้ ให้ใช้สกรูยาวขนาด 8 มม. ถ้าใช้สกรูยาวกว่านี้อาจทำให้ชุดประกอบเสียหายได้

*1 When you stand the unit, be careful not to damage the fuse on the rear.
*2 Not supplied for this unit.

*1 เมื่อคุณตั้งชุดประกอบขึ้น ระวังอย่าทำให้ฟิวส์บริเวณส่วนท้ายเสียหาย
*2 ไม่ได้ให้มากับชุดประกอบนี้

ENGLISH

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

A Typical connections / การเชื่อมต่อแบบปกต

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

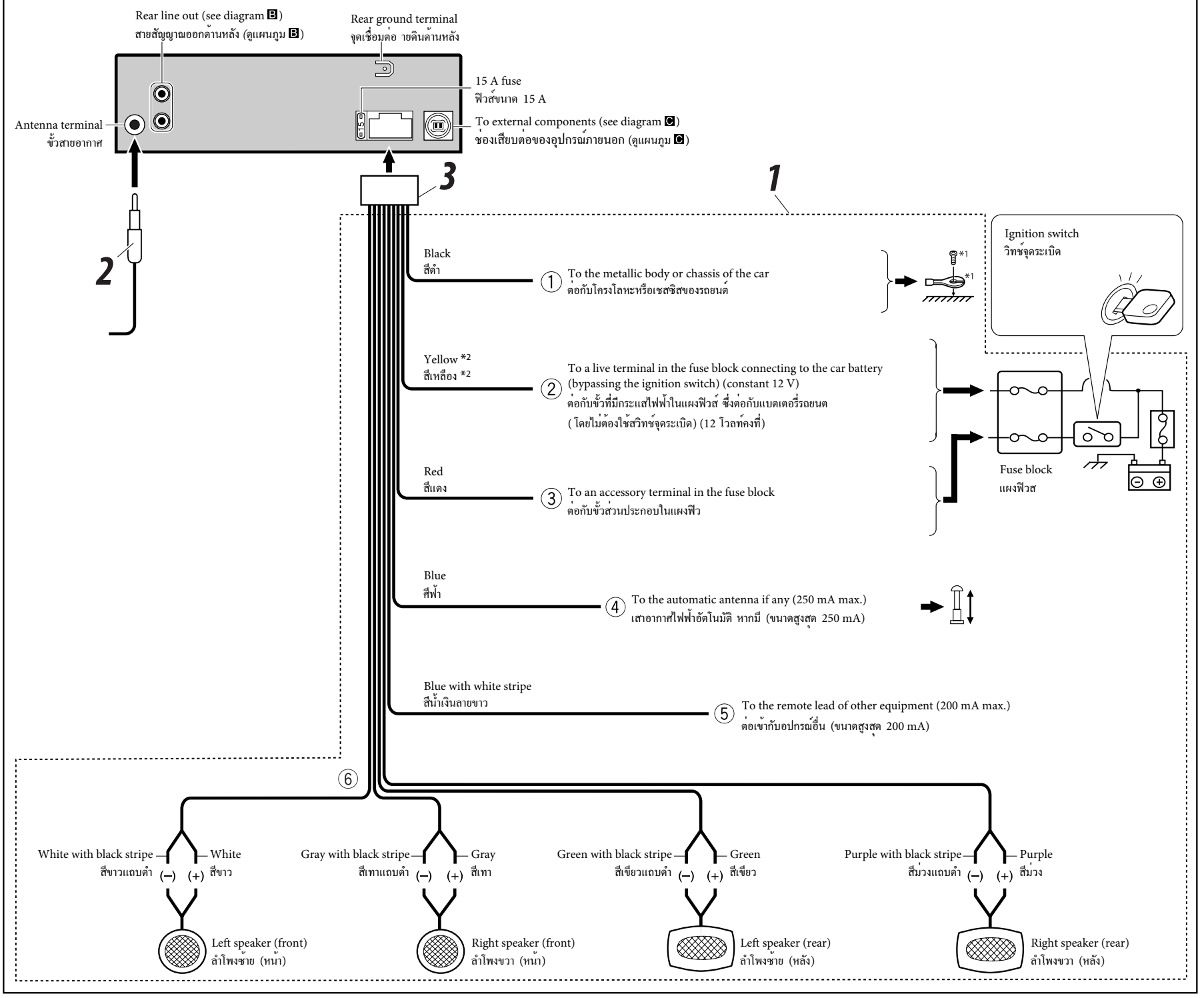
1. Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
2. Connect the antenna cord.
3. Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

ไทย

การเชื่อมโดยใช้ไฟฟ้า

ก่อนการเชื่อมต่อ: ตรวจดูการเดินสายไฟในรถยนต์ให้ละเอียดถี่ถ้วน เพราะการเชื่อมต่อที่ผิดพลาดอาจทำให้เกิดความเสียหายร้ายแรงต่อชุดประกอบชุดนี้ได้
สายตะกั่วของสายไฟและของอุปกรณ์ต่อเชื่อมจากตัวถังรถยนต์อาจมีสีที่ไม่เหมือนกัน

1. ต่อสายไฟสีตามลำดับที่ระบุในรูปด้านล่าง
2. เชื่อมต่อกับขายอากาศ
3. สุดท้าย ต่อส่วนควบคุมการเดินสายไฟเข้ากับชุดประกอบชุดนี้



*1 Not supplied for this unit.
*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise the power cannot be turned on.

*1 ไม่ได้ให้มากับชุดประกอบนี้
*2 ก่อนการตรวจสอบการทำงานของชุดประกอบนี้ก่อนที่จะติดตั้ง ต้องต่อสายตะกั่วนี้ก่อน มิฉะนั้นจะไม่สามารถเปิดเครื่องได

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.**
* Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.**
* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **This unit becomes hot.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **This unit does not work at all.**
* Have you reset your unit?

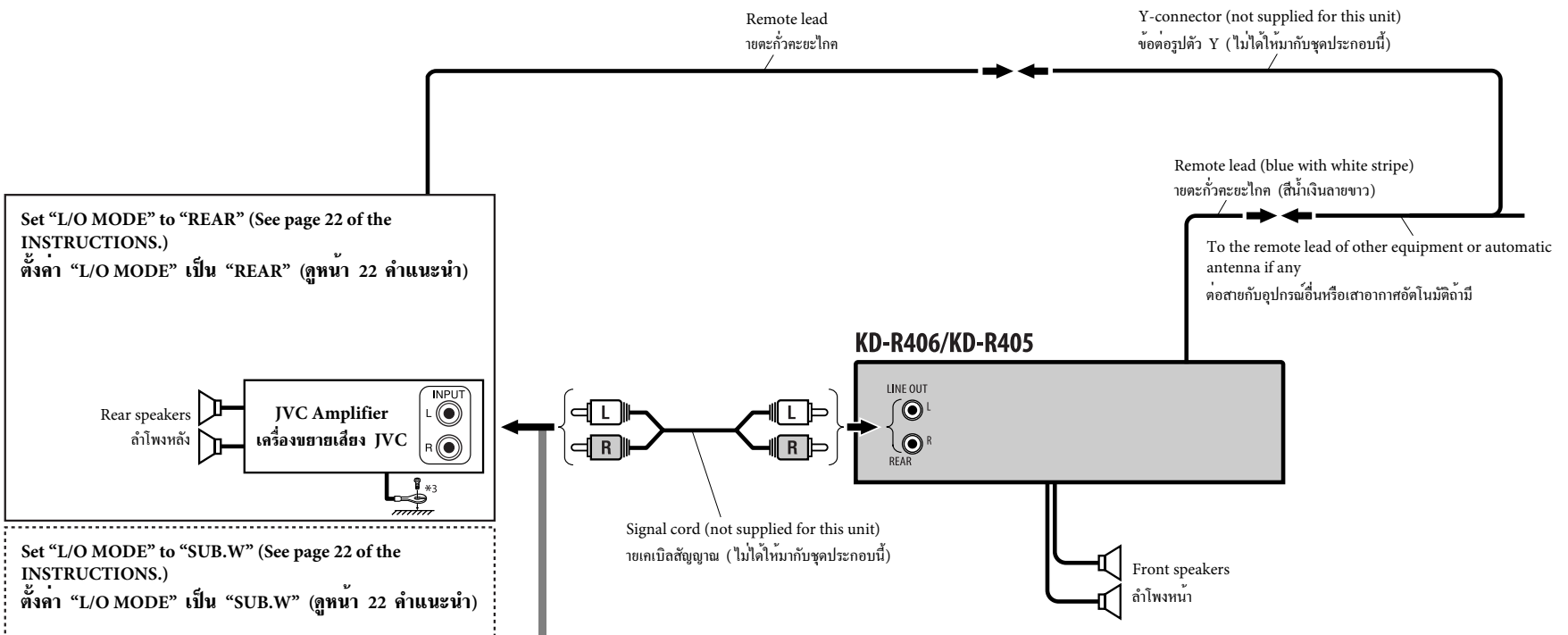
การตรวจสอบปัญหาขัดข้อง

- **ฟิวส์ขาด**
* มีการเชื่อม ายตะกั่วสีดำและสีแดงอย่างถูกต้องหรือไม่
- **ไม่สามารถเปิดเครื่องได้**
* มีการเชื่อมสายตะกั่วสีเหลืองหรือไม่
- **ไม่มีเสียงออกจากลำโพง**
* สายตะกั่วส่วนที่ออกทางลำโพงเกิดไฟฟ้าลัดวงจรหรือไม่
- **เสียงเพี้ยน**
* สายตะกั่วส่วนที่ออกทางลำโพงต่อลงดินหรือไม่
* สายขั้วลบ "–" ของลำโพงด้านซ้ายและขวาต่อลงดินตามปกติหรือไม่
- **เสียงรบกวน**
* มีการใช้สายสั้นๆ หรือหนาๆ ต่อจากเครื่องสวนที่ติดตั้ง ไว้บนพื้นด้านหลังกับตัวถังรถยนต์หรือไม่
- **ชุดประกอบร้อนขึ้น**
* สายตะกั่วส่วนที่ออกทางลำโพงต่อลงดินหรือไม่
* สายขั้วลบ "–" ของลำโพงด้านซ้ายและขวาต่อลงดินตามปกติหรือไม่
- **เครื่องรับนี้ทำงานไม่**
* ท่านได้ตั้งเครื่องใหม่แล้วหรือยัง

B Connecting the external amplifier or subwoofer / การเชื่อมต่อเครื่องขยายเสียงภายนอก

You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.
- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**

คุณสามารถต่อกับแอมพลิฟายเออร์ เพื่อเพิ่มคุณ ภาพเสียงให้กับระบบสเตอริโอของรถยนต์
- ต่อสายตะกั่วระยะไกล (สีน้ำเงินลายขาว) เข้ากับสายตะกั่วระยะไกลของอุปกรณ์อื่น ๆ เพื่อจะสามารถควบคุมโดยชุดประกอบนี้ได้
- **ถอดลำโพงออกจากชุดประกอบนี้ แล้วต่อเข้ากับเครื่องขยาย ทิ้งสายตะกั่วลำโพงของชุดประกอบนี้ไว้**



C Connecting the external components / การต่อเพิ่มเติมเข้ากับอุปกรณ์อื่นๆ

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapter.

CAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

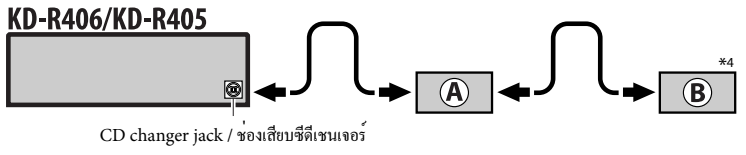
JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.

You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters.
- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod	KS-PD100
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter	KS-U58

When connecting more than one component (maximum: two), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.

When connecting two components in series / เมื่อเชื่อมต่อส่วนประกอบสองชิ้นแบบอนุกรม



Ⓐ **KS-BTA200**
Ⓑ*4 **CD-CH / KS-PD100 / KS-U57 / KS-U58**

iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

เมื่อเชื่อมต่ออุปกรณ์ภายนอก ให้ดูข้อมูลเกี่ยวกับอุปกรณ์ภายนอกและอะแดปเตอร์จากคู่มือที่ให้มาด้วย

ข้อควรระวัง:
ก่อนจะเชื่อมต่อกับอุปกรณ์ภายนอก กรุณาตรวจสอบให้แน่ใจว่าปิดเครื่องอยู่

ท่านสามารถเชื่อมต่อส่วนประกอบ JVC ต่อไปนี้เข้ากับช่องเสียบซีดีเชนเจอร์

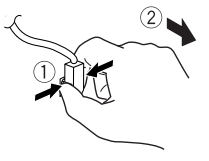
ส่วนประกอบ JVC	ชื่อรุ่น
ซีดีเชนเจอร์ (CD-CH)	CH-X1500 ฯลฯ

เชื่อมต่อส่วนประกอบต่อไปนี้ผ่านอะแดปเตอร์แบบต่างๆ ของ JVC ได้เช่นกัน
- อาจต้องซื้อสายเชื่อมต่อต่างหาก

ส่วนประกอบ	อะแดปเตอร์	ชื่อรุ่น
อุปกรณ์บลูทูธ	อะแดปเตอร์บลูทูธ	KS-BTA200
iPod	อินเทอร์เฟสอะแดปเตอร์สำหรับรุ่น iPod	KS-PD100
เครื่องเล่นเพลงแบบพกพา พร้อมขั้วต่อ Line Output	อะแดปเตอร์ Line Input	KS-U57
เครื่องเล่นเพลงแบบพกพา พร้อมช่องเสียบแบบ 3.5 มม. Stereo Mini	อะแดปเตอร์ AUX Input	KS-U58

เมื่อเชื่อมต่อส่วนประกอบมากกว่าหนึ่งชิ้น (สูงสุดสองชิ้น) ขอแนะนำให้ท่านเชื่อมต่อส่วนประกอบแบบอนุกรมตามคำอธิบายข้างล่าง

To disconnect the connector / การถอดตัวเชื่อมต่อ



Hold the connector tightly (①), then pull it out (②).
จับตัวเชื่อมต่อให้แน่น (①) แล้วดึงออก (②)

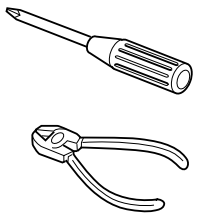
iPod เป็นเครื่องหมายการค้าของ Apple Inc. ซึ่งจดทะเบียนการค้าในประเทศสหรัฐอเมริกาและประเทศอื่นๆ

*3 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.
*4 To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 22 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

*3 ต่อลวดสายดินให้แน่นเข้ากับตัวถังเหล็ก หรือตัวถังรถ—ตรงส่วน ที่ไม่มีสีเคลือบ (หากมีสีเคลือบอยู่ ให้ขูดสีออกก่อน ก่อนต่อลวดสายดิน) หากไม่ปฏิบัติตามคำแนะนำนี้ เครื่องอาจชำรุดหรือเสียหายได
*4 ในการใช้ส่วนประกอบเหล่านี้ ให้ตั้งค่าการรับสัญญาณอุปกรณ์ภายนอกให้ถูกต้อง (ดูหน้า 22 คำแนะนำ)

KD-R406/KD-R405

Installation/Connection Manual
Manual Pemasangan/Penyambungan



GET0571-009A
[UN]

0808DTSMDTJEIN
EN, IN
© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

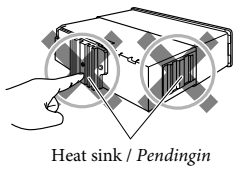
WARNINGS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with a maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "AMP GAIN" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 22 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



Heat sink / *Pendingin*

INDONESIA

Unit ini didisain untuk beroperasi hanya pada ***12 V DC, sistem listrik tanah NEGATIVE****. Jika kendaraan anda tidak memiliki sistem ini, sebuah pembalik tegangan diperlukan, yang mana dapat dibeli di penyalur-penyalur audio mobil JVC.*

PERINGATAN

Untuk mencegah hubungan pendek, kami menyarankan anda memutuskan sambungan terminal negatif baterai dan membuat semua sambungan-sambungan listrik sebelum memasang unit.

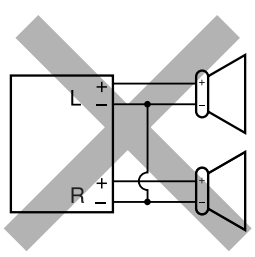
- **Pastikan untuk mentanahkan unit ini ke casis mobil kembali setelah pemasangan.**

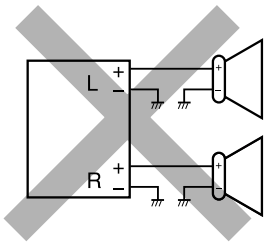
Catatan:

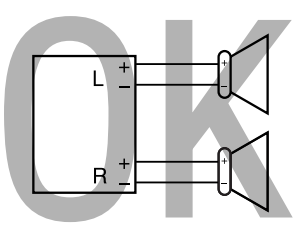
- *Ganti sekring dengan voltase yang sudah ditetapkan. Jika sekring sering meledak, konsultasikan pada penyalur audio mobil JVC anda.*
- *Disarankan untuk menghubungkan speaker-speaker dengan maksimum power lebih dari 50 W (keduanya di belakang dan di depan, dengan sebuah impedansi* **4 Ω sampai 8 Ω***). Jika maksimum power kurang dari 50 W, ganti pengaturan "AMP GAIN" ("PENAMBAH PENGUAT") untuk mencegah speaker-speaker dari kerusakan (lihat halaman 22 dari BUKU PETUNJUK).*
- *Untuk mencegah hubungan pendek, tutup ujung-ujung terminal-terminal TIDAK DIGUNAKAN dengan pita isolasi.*
- *Pendingin menjadi sangat panas setelah digunakan. Hati-hati untuk tidak menyentuhnya ketika memindahkan unit ini.*

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.







TINDAKAN-TINDAKAN PENCEGAHAN pada suplai power dan sambungan-sambungan speaker:

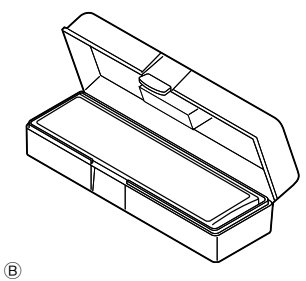
- **JANGAN sambungkan ujung-ujung speaker dari kabel power ke baterai mobil; sebaliknya, unit tersebut akan secara serius rusak.**
- *SEBELUM menyambung ujung-ujung speaker dari kabel power ke speaker-speaker, cek perkabelan speaker dalam mobil anda.*

Parts list for installation and connection

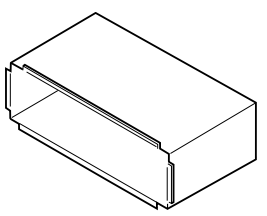
The following parts are provided for this unit. If any item is missing, consult your JVC car audio dealer immediately.

Daftar bagian-bagian untuk pemasangan dan penyambungan

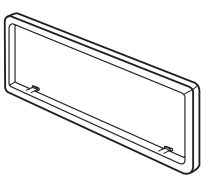
Bagian-bagian berikut disediakan untuk unit ini. Jika ada bagian yang hilang, segera hubungi dealer audio mobil JVC anda.



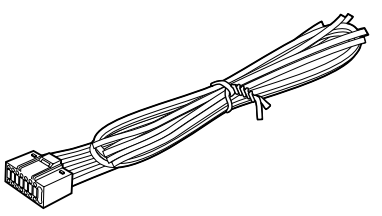
Ⓐ / Ⓑ
Hard case/Control panel
Kotak keras/Panel kontrol



Ⓒ
Sleeve
Selongsong



Ⓓ
Trim plate
Plat rapi

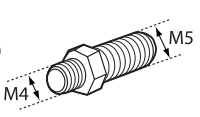


Ⓔ
Power cord
Kabel power

Ⓕ
Washer (ø5)
Perapat sambungan (ø5)

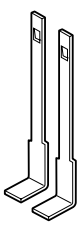
Ⓖ
Lock nut (M5)
Mur kunci (M5)

Ⓗ
Mounting bolt (M4 × 5 mm; M5 × 12.5 mm)
Baut bingkai (M4 × 5 mm; M5 × 12.5 mm)



Ⓘ
Rubber cushion
Bantalan karet

Ⓙ
Handles
Pegangan-pegangan



Ⓚ
Remote controller
Pengontrol jauh

RM-RK50

Ⓛ
Battery
Baterai

CR2025

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

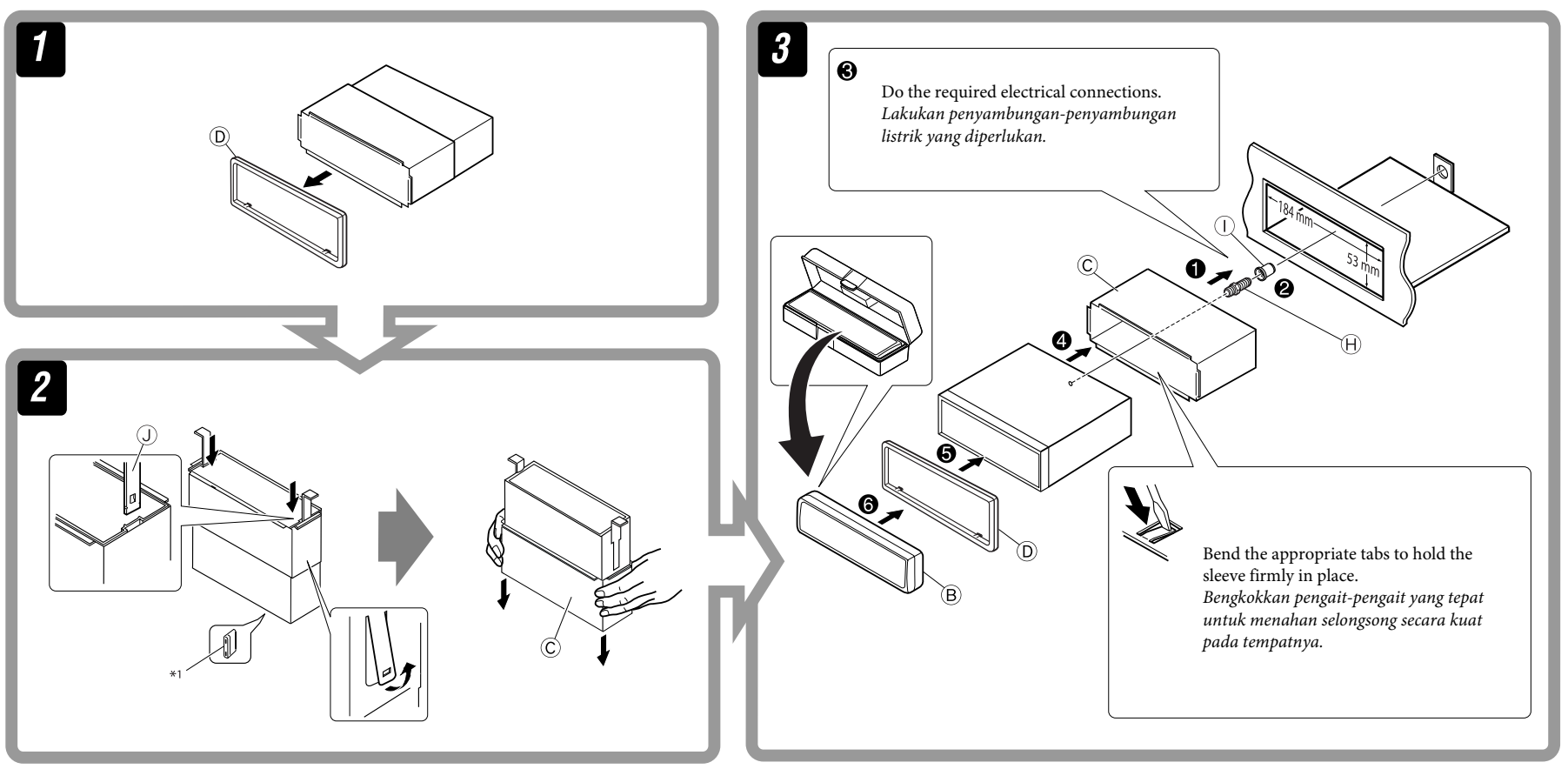
The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

PEMASANGAN (BINGKAI-DALAM DASH)

Ilustrasi berikut menunjukkan sebuah tipe pemasangan. Jika anda mempunyai suatu pertanyaan atau informasi yang diperlukan mengenai alat-alat pemasangan, konsultasikan pada penyalur audio mobil JVC atau sebuah perusahaan yang mensuplai alat-alat.

- *Jika anda tidak yakin bagaimana memasang unit ini dengan benar, biarkan dipasang dengan teknisi yang berkualitas.*

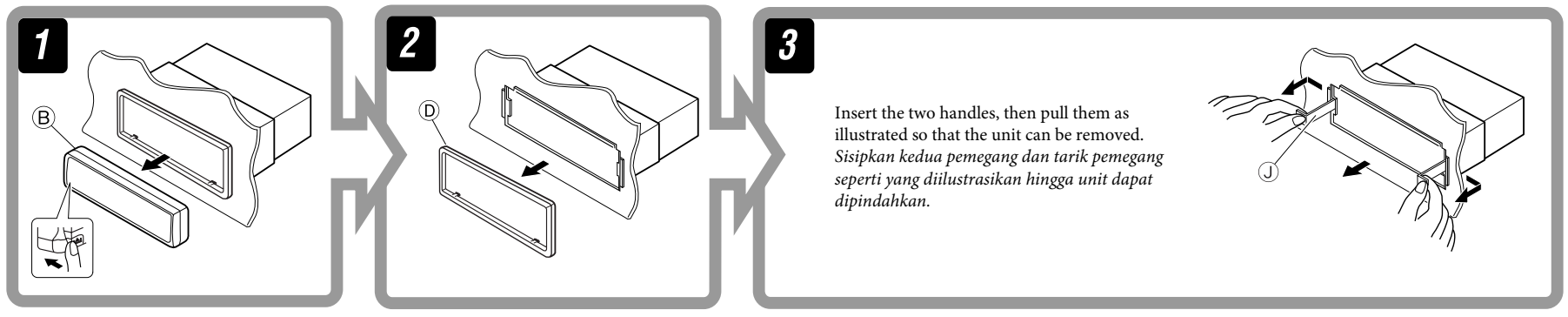


Removing the unit

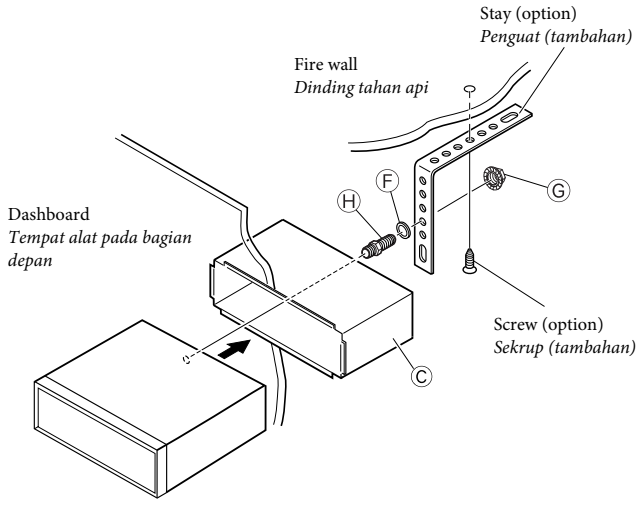
Before removing the unit, release the rear section.

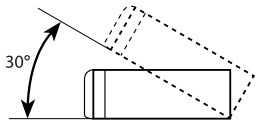
Memindahkan unit

Sebelum memindahkan unit, lepaskan seksi belakang.



When using the optional stay / Ketika menggunakan penguat tambahan

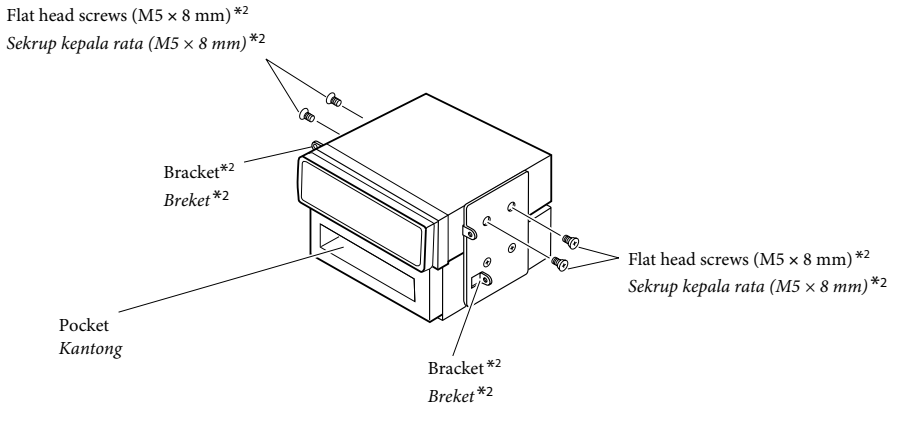




Install the unit at an angle of less than 30˚.
Pasang penerima pada suatu sudut kurang dari 30˚.

When installing the unit without using the sleeve / Ketika memasang unit tanpa menggunakan selongsong

In a Toyota car for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place.
Dalam sebuah kereta Toyota misalnya, pertama pindahkan radio mobil dan pasang unit tersebut ke dalam tempatnya.



Note : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm-long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

Catatan : *Ketika memasang alat penerima pada breket bingkai, pastikan untuk menggunakan sekrup-sekrup panjang–8 mm. Jika sekrup yang lebih panjang digunakan, maka dapat merusak alat penerima.*

*1 When you stand the unit, be careful not to damage the fuse on the rear.
*2 Not supplied for this unit.

*1 *Ketika anda memberdirikan unit, hati-hati untuk tidak merusak sekring di belakang.*
*2 *Tidak disediakan untuk unit ini.*

ENGLISH

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

A Typical connections / Ciri khas sambungan-sambungan

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

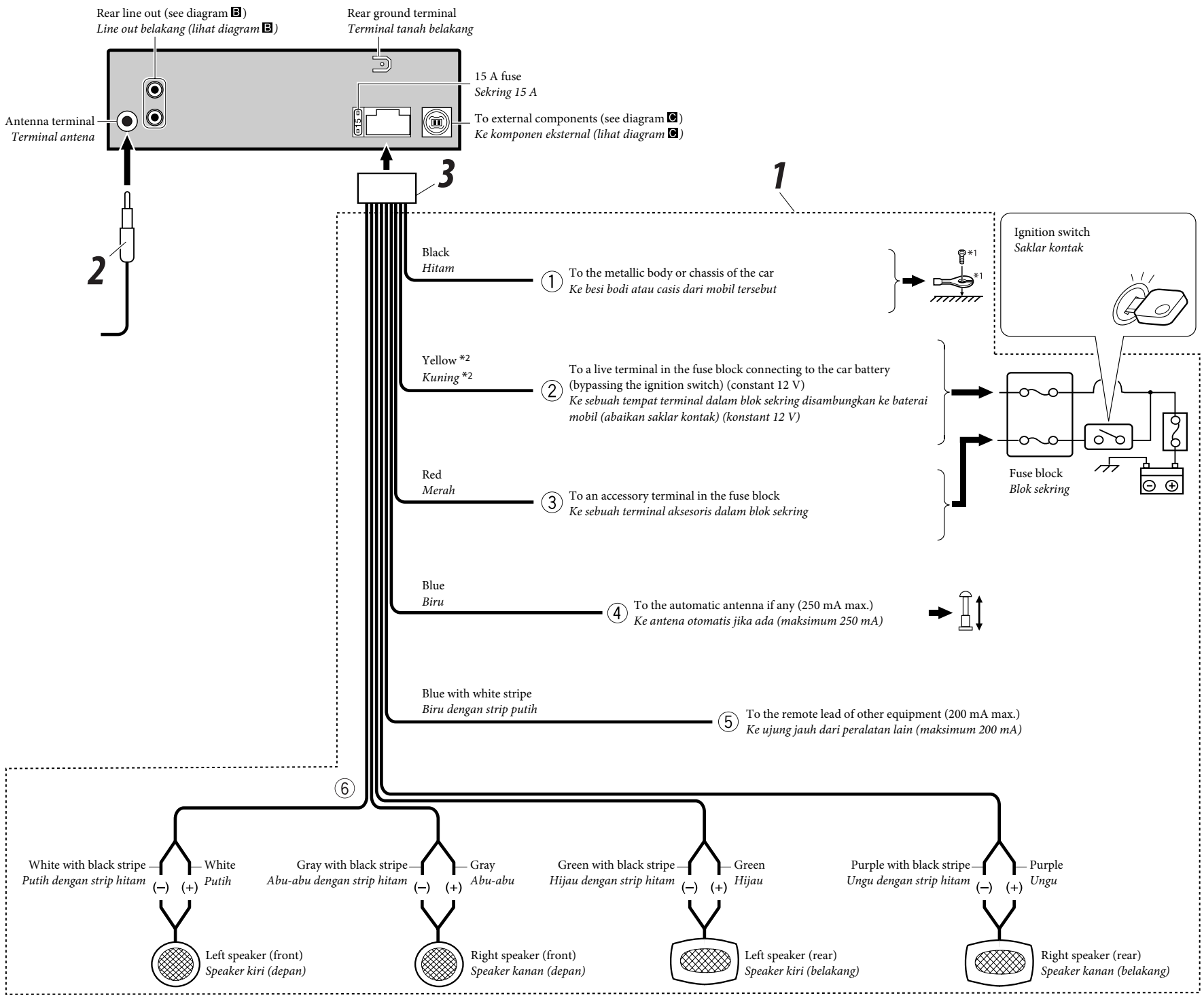
1 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
2 Connect the antenna cord.
3 Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

INDONESIA

SAMBUNGAN-SAMBUNGAN LISTRIK

Sebelum penyambungan: *Cek perkabelan dalam mobil dengan hati-hati. Penyambungan yang tidak benar mungkin menyebabkan kerusakan serius pada unit.*
Ujung dari kabel power dan beberapa konektor dari bodi mobil mungkin berbeda dalam warna.

1 *Sambungkan ujung berwarna dari kabel power dalam urutan spesifikasi pada ilustrasi di bawah.*
2 *Sambungkan kabel antena.*
3 *Akhirnya sambungkan dudukan kabel ke unit.*



*1 Not supplied for this unit.
*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise the power cannot be turned on.

*1 *Tidak disediakan untuk unit ini.*
*2 *Sebelum pengecekan pengoperasian dari unit ini sebelum pemasangan, ujung ini harus sudah dihubungkan, selain itu power tidak dapat dihidupkan.*

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.**
* Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.**
* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **This unit becomes hot.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **This unit does not work at all.**
* Have you reset your unit?

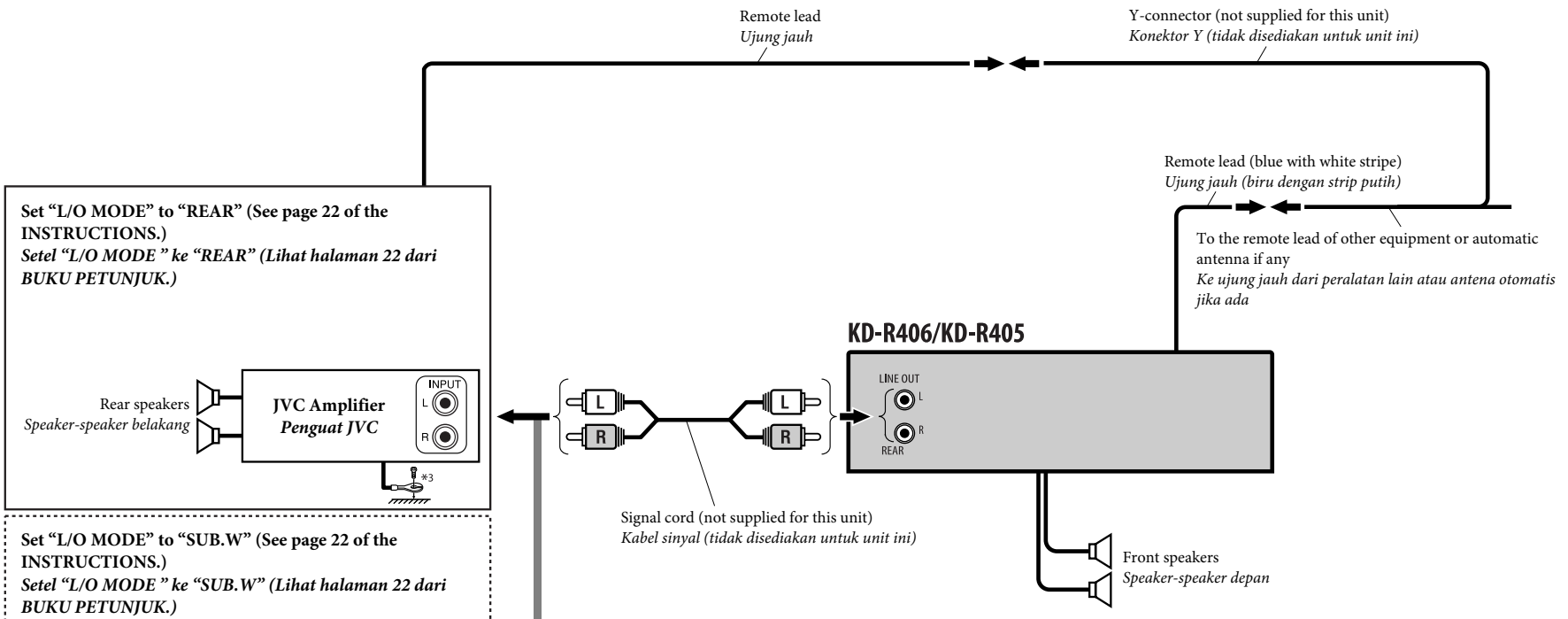
PEMECAHAN MASALAH

- **Sekring meledak.**
* *Apakah ujung-ujung merah dan hitam tersambung dengan benar?*
- **Power tidak dapat dihidupkan.**
* *Apakah ujung kuning sudah tersambung?*
- **Tidak ada suara dari speaker.**
* *Apakah ujung keluaran speaker terhubung pendek?*
- **Suara terdistorsi.**
* *Apakah ujung keluaran speaker sudah ditanahkan?*
* *Apakah terminal-terminal "–" dari speaker-speaker L dan R sudah ditanahkan secara umum?*
- **Berisik yang mengganggu suara-suara.**
* *Apakah terminal tanahan belakang tersambung ke casis mobil menggunakan kabel-kabel terpendek dan tertebal?*
- **Alat penerima ini menjadi panas.**
* *Apakah ujung keluaran speaker sudah ditanahkan?*
* *Apakah terminal-terminal "–" dari speaker-speaker L dan R sudah ditanahkan secara umum?*
- **Alat penerima ini tidak bekerja secara keseluruhan.**
* *Apakah anda sudah reset (memasang kembali) alat penerima anda?*

B Connecting the external amplifier or subwoofer / Penyambungan penguat eksternal atau subwoofer

You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.
- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**

Anda dapat menyambungkan penguat untuk meningkatkan sistem stereo mobil anda.
- *Sambungkan ujung jauh (biru dengan strip putih) ke ujung jauh dari peralatan lain sehingga dapat dikontrol melalui unit ini.*
- **Putuskan sambungan speaker-speaker dari unit ini, sambungkan ini ke penguat. Biarkan ujung speaker dari unit ini tidak digunakan.**



C Connecting the external components / Menyambung komponen eksternal

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapter.

CAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

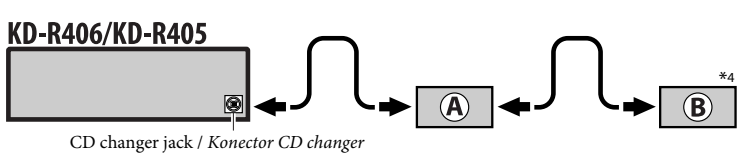
JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.

You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters.
- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod	KS-PD100
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter	KS-U58

When connecting more than one component (maximum: two), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.

When connecting two components in series / Bila menghubungkan dua komponen dalam rangkaian



Ⓐ **KS-BTA200**
Ⓑ*4 **CD-CH / KS-PD100 / KS-U57 / KS-U58**

iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Bila menghubungkan komponen eksternal, rujuk juga buku petunjuk yang dibekalkan untuk komponen dan adaptor.

Peringatan:
Sebelum menyambungkan komponen eksternal, pastikan bahwa alat penerima sudah dimatikan.

Anda dapat menghubungkan komponen JVC berikut ini ke jack CD changer

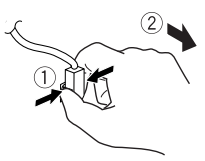
Komponen JVC	Nama model
CD changer (CD-CH)	*CH-X1500, etc.*

Anda juga dapat menghubungkan komponen berikut ini melalui berbagai adaptor JVC.
- *Kabel koneksi mungkin harus dibeli secara terpisah.*

Komponen	Adaptor	Nama model
Perangkat Bluetooth	*Adaptor Bluetooth*	*KS-BTA200*
iPod	*Adaptor interface untuk iPod*	*KS-PD100*
Audio player portabel dengan jack line output	*Adaptor line input*	*KS-U57*
Audio player portabel dengan jack stereo mini 3.5 mm	*Adaptor AUX input*	*KS-U58*

Bila menghubungkan beberapa komponen (maksimum: dua), dianjurkan agar Anda menghubungkan komponen dalam rangkaian seperti dijelaskan di bawah.

To disconnect the connector / *Untuk memutuskan konektor*



Hold the connector tightly (①), then pull it out (②).
Pegang erat konektor (①) lalu tarik keluar (②).

iPod adalah merek dagang dari Apple Inc., terdaftar di Amerika Serikat dan di negara-negara lain.

*3 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.
*4 To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 22 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

*3 *Pasangkan dengan kuat kabel tanah ke bodi besi atau ke casis dari mobil—pada tempat yang tidak dilapisi cat (jika dilapisi cat, hilangkan cat sebelum memasang kabel). Kegagalan melakukan ini mungkin menyebabkan kerusakan pada unit tersebut.*
*4 *Untuk menggunakan komponen ini, lakukan pengaturan masukan eksternal yang benar (lihat PETUNJUK di halaman 22).*

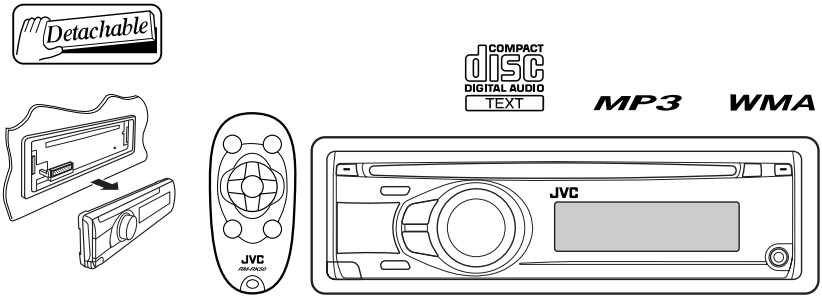
JVC

ENGLISH

中文

CD RECEIVER KD-R406/KD-R405

CD 收音組合機 KD-R406/KD-R405



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 7.
取消屏幕演示功能，參閱第 7 頁。

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
有關安裝和連接方法，分別參閱操作手冊。

INSTRUCTIONS
使用說明書

GET0571-005A
[UT]

ENGLISH

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and/or invisible class 1M laser radiation when open. Do not view directly with optical instruments.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION	ATTENTION	AVISO	VARNING	注意	CAUTION
VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS. IEC60825-1:2001 (ENG)	RAYONNEMENT LASER VISIBLE ET/OU INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 1M UNE FOIS OUVERT. NE PAS REGARDER DIRECTEMENT AVEC DES INSTRUMENTS OPTIQUES. (FRA)	RADIACIÓN LÁSER DE CLASE 1M VISIBLE Y/O INVISIBLE CUANDO ESTÁ ABIERTO. NO MIRAR DIRECTAMENTE CON INSTRUMENTAL ÓPTICO. (ESP)	SYNLIG OCH/ELLER OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, KLASS 1M, NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN MED OPTISKA INSTRUMENT. (SWE)	ここを開くと可視及び/または不可視のクラス1Mレーザー放射が出ます。光学装置で直接見ないでください。 (JPN)	VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS II LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM. FDA 21 CFR (ENG)

[European Union only]

Warning:

If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.

Caution on volume setting:

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

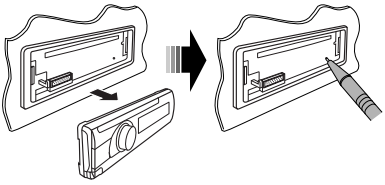
For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

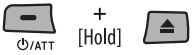
If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

How to reset your unit



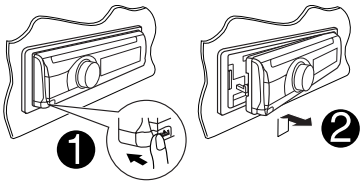
- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased (except the registered Bluetooth device, see page 10).*

How to forcibly eject a disc

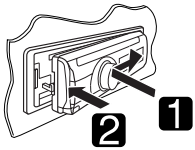


- *Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.*
- *If this does not work, reset your unit.*

Detaching the control panel



Attaching the control panel



CONTENTS

OPERATIONS

Basic operations 4
- Using the control panel 4
- Using the remote controller (RM-RK50) 5

Preparation 7
Listening to the radio 8
Disc operations 9

EXTERNAL DEVICES

Using the Bluetooth® devices 10
- Using the Bluetooth cellular phone 12
- Using the Bluetooth audio player 13

Listening to the CD changer 14
Listening to the iPod 15
Listening to the other external components 16

SETTINGS

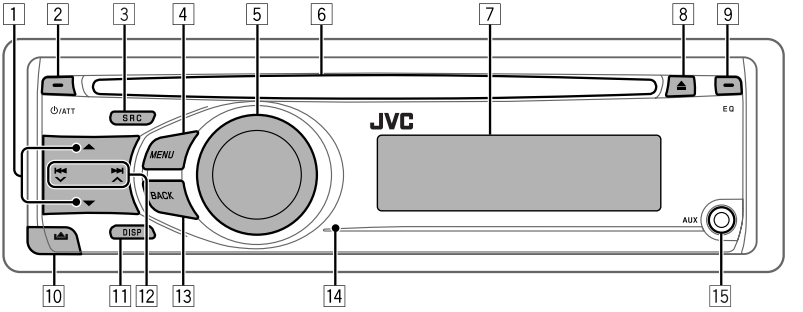
Selecting a preset sound mode 17
Title assignment 18
Bluetooth settings 19
Menu operations 20
Color settings 23

REFERENCES

More about this unit 24
Troubleshooting 27
Maintenance 31
Specifications 32

Basic operations

Using the control panel



1 • **FM/AM**: Select preset station.
• **CD/CD-CH**: Select folder.
• **IPOD**: Enter the main menu/Pause playback/ Confirm selection.
• **BT-PHONE/BT-AUDIO**: Enter/go back to previous Bluetooth menu.

2 • Turn on the power.
• Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).
• Turn off the power [Hold].

3 Select the source.
FM → **AM***1 → **CD***2 → **CD-CH***2/**IPOD***2 (or **EXT INPUT**) → **BT-PHONE***2 → **BT-AUDIO***2 → **AUX IN***1 → (back to the beginning)

4 • Enter list operations.
• Enter Menu setting [Hold].

5 • Control the volume or selection [Turn].*3
• Confirm the selection [Press].*3
• **FM**: Enter SSM preset mode [Hold].*3
• **CD/CD-CH/IPOD**: Enter playback mode [Hold].*3

6 Loading slot

7 Display window

8 Eject disc.

9 Select the sound mode.

10 Detach the panel.

11 Change the display information.

12 • **FM/AM**: Search for station.
• **CD/CD-CH**: Select track.
• **IPOD**: Select track.
• **BT-PHONE/BT-AUDIO**: Select setting item/ registered device.

13 Return to the previous menu.

14 Remote sensor

15 AUX (auxiliary) input jack

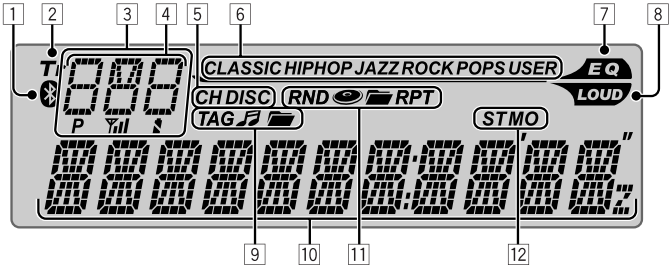
*1 *You cannot select these sources if they were disabled in the Menu (see "Menu operations" on page 22).*

*2 *You cannot select these sources if they are not ready or not connected.*

*3 *Also known as "Control dial" in this manual.*

You can change the display and button illumination (see "COLOR" on page 21).

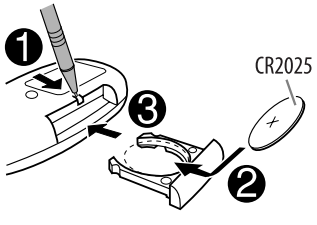
Display window



1 Bluetooth indicator
2 Tr (track) indicator
3 Status of Bluetooth device
(Device number, [P: 1 – 5]; signal strength, [: 0 – 3]*; battery reminder, [: 0 – 3]*)
* *As the number increases, the signal/battery power becomes stronger.*
4 Source display / Track number / Folder number / Time countdown indicator
5 Playback source indicators—CH (CD changer), DISC
6 Sound mode indicators—CLASSIC, HIP HOP, JAZZ, ROCK, POPS, USER
7 EQ (equalizer) indicator
8 LOUD (loudness) indicator
9 Disc information indicators—
TAG (Tag information), (track/file), (folder)
10 Main display
11 Playback mode / item indicators—RND (random), (disc), (folder), RPT (repeat)
12 Tuner reception indicators—ST (stereo), MO (monaural)

Using the remote controller (RM-RK50)

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)



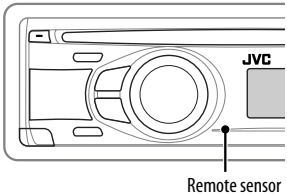
Caution:

- Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.
- Battery shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire, or the like.

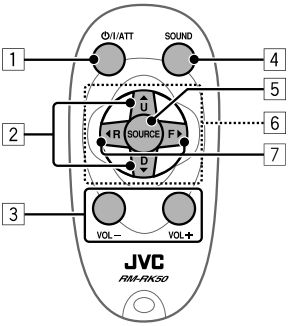
If the effectiveness of the remote controller decreases, replace the battery.

Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).



Continued on the next page



1 • Turns the power on if pressed briefly or attenuates the sound when the power is on.
• Turns the power off if pressed and held.

2 • Changes the preset stations.
• Changes the folder of the MP3/WMA.
• While playing an MP3 disc on an MP3-compatible CD changer:
– Changes the disc if pressed briefly.
– Changes the folder if pressed and held.
• While listening to an Apple iPod:
– Pauses or resumes playback with D ▼.
– Enters the main menu with ▲ U. (Now ▲ U/D ▼/◄ R/F ► work as the menu selecting buttons.)*

* ▲ U : *Returns to the previous menu.*
D ▼ : *Confirms the selection.*

3 Adjusts the volume level.

4 Selects the sound mode.

5 Selects the source.

6 For Bluetooth cellular phone:
– Answers calls if pressed briefly.
– Rejects calls if pressed and held.

7 • Searches for stations if pressed briefly.
• Fast-forwards or reverses the track if pressed and held.
• Changes the tracks if pressed briefly.
• While listening to an iPod (in menu selecting mode):
– Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press D ▼ to confirm the selection.)
– Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.
• Reverse skip/forward skip for Bluetooth audio.

Warning (to prevent accidents and damage):

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent.
- Do not leave the remote controller in a place (such as dashboards) exposed to direct sunlight for a long time.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach.
- Do not recharge, short, disassemble, heat the battery, or dispose of it in a fire.
- Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
- Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
- Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.

Preparation

Cancel the display demonstration and set the clock

• See also page 20.

1		**Turn on the power.**
2		**Cancel the display demonstrations** Select "DEMO," then "DEMO OFF." **Set the clock** Select "CLOCK" → "CLOCK SET." Adjust the hour, then press control dial once to proceed to adjust the minute. • To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

DISP	When the power is turned off: Check the current clock time when "CLOCK DISP" is set to "CLOCK OFF," (see page 20) When the power is turned on: Change the display information of the current source
FM/AM	Station name*1 → Frequency → Clock → (back to the beginning)
CD/CD-CH	Audio CD/CD Text: Disc title/performer*2 → Track title*2 → Current track number with the elapsed playing time → Current track number with the clock time → (back to the beginning) MP3/WMA: Album name/performer (folder name)*3 → Track title (file name)*3 → Current track number with the elapsed playing time → Current track number with the clock time → (back to the beginning)
IPOD	Folder name → Track name → Current track number with the elapsed playing time → Current track number with the clock time → (back to the beginning)

*1 *If no title is assigned to a station, "NO NAME" appears. To assign a title to a station, see page 18.*

*2 *If the current disc is an audio CD, "NO NAME" appears.*

*3 *If an MP3/WMA file does not have Tag information or "TAG DISPLAY" is set to "TAG OFF" (see page 20), folder name and file name appear.*

Listening to the radio

1	SRC	**Select "FM" or "AM."**
2		**Search for a station to listen—Auto Search.** Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until "M" flashes on the display, then press it repeatedly. • When receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength, "ST" lights up on the display.

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

• See also page 21.

[Hold]

[Turn] → [Press]

Select "TUNER" → "MONO" → "MONO ON"

Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

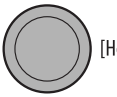
• "MO" lights up on the display.

To restore the stereo effect, repeat the same procedure to select "MONO OFF." The MO indicator goes off.

FM station automatic presetting —SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

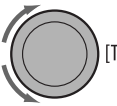
You can preset up to 18 stations for FM.

1 **While listening to a station...**



[Hold]

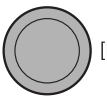
2 **Select the preset number range you want to store.**



[Turn]

SSM 01–06 ◄► SSM 07–12 ◄► SSM 13–18

3



[Press]

Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically.

To preset other 6 stations, repeat from step **1** again.

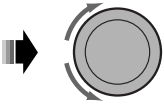
Manual presetting (FM/AM)

You can preset up to 18 stations for FM and 6 stations for AM.

Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.50 MHz into preset number "04."

1

2 **Select preset number "04."**

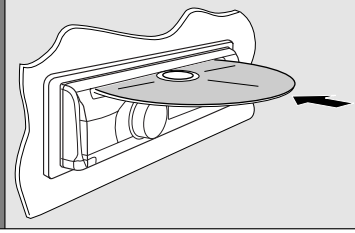


3

Selecting preset station

or

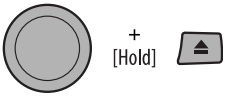
Disc operations

1		**Turn on the power.**
2		**Insert a disc.** All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

Stop playing and ejecting the disc

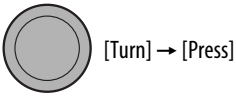
- "NO DISC" appears. Press SRC to listen to another playback source.

Prohibiting disc ejection



To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure.

Selecting a track/folder



- For MP3/WMA discs, select the desired folder, then the desired track by performing the control dial.
- To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

Continued on the next page

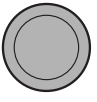
Pressing (or holding) the following buttons allows you to...

	MP3/WMA: Select folder
	[Press]Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track

Selecting the playback modes

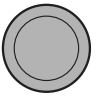
You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time.

1



[Hold]

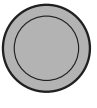
2



[Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT ↔ RANDOM

3



[Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT		
TRACK RPT	:	Repeats current track
FOLDER RPT	:	MP3/WMA: Repeats current folder
RANDOM		
FOLDER RND	:	MP3/WMA: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders
ALL RND	:	Randomly plays all tracks

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "**RPT OFF**" or "**RND OFF**."
- To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

Using the Bluetooth® devices

For Bluetooth operations, it is required to connect the **Bluetooth adapter** (KS-BTA200) (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- Refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth adapter and the Bluetooth device.
- Refer to the list (included in the box) to check the countries where you may use the Bluetooth® function.

To use a Bluetooth device through the unit ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO") for the first time, you need to establish Bluetooth wireless connection between the unit and the device.

- Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit even if you reset your unit. Up to five devices can be registered in total.
- Only one device can be connected at a time for each source ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO").

Registering a Bluetooth device

Registration (Pairing) methods

Use either of the following items in the Bluetooth menu to register and establish the connection with a device.

- Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO" as the source to operate the Bluetooth menu.

OPEN	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the Bluetooth device.
SEARCH	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the unit.

Registering using "OPEN"

Preparation: Operate the device to turn on its Bluetooth function.

1 **Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."**

SRC

2 **Select "NEW DEVICE."**

3 **Select "OPEN."**

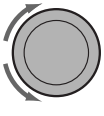
4 **Enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number) code to the unit.**

- You can enter any number you like (1-digit to 16-digit number). [Initial: 0000]

* *Some devices have their own PIN code. Enter the specified PIN code to the unit.*

1 Move to the next (or previous) number position.

2 Select a number.


[Turn]

3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 until you finish entering a PIN code.

4 Confirm the entry.

"OPEN.." flashes on the display.

5 **Use the Bluetooth device to search and connect.**

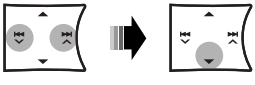
On the device to be connected, enter the same PIN code you have just entered for this unit.
"CONNECTED" appears on the display.
Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

The device remains registered even after you disconnect the device. Use "CONNECT" (or activate "AUTO CNNCT") to connect the same device from next time on. (See the following and page 19.)

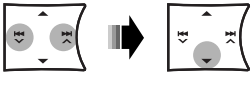
Connecting a device

Perform steps **1** and **2** on left column, then...

1 • **Select "SEARCH" to search for available devices.**
The unit searches and displays the list of the available devices. If no available device is detected, "UNFOUND" appears.
• **Select "SPECIAL" to connect a special device.**
The unit displays the list of the preset devices.



2 **Select a device you want to connect.**



3 • **For available devices...**
Enter the specific PIN code of the device to the unit.
Refer to the instructions supplied with the device to check the PIN code.
Use the Bluetooth device to connect.
Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.
• **For special device...**
Use "OPEN" or "SEARCH" to connect.

Continued on the next page

ENGLISH

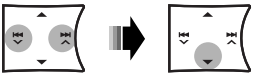
Connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device

1 **Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."**

SRC

2 **Select a registered device you want to connect/disconnect/delete.**

3 • **Select "CONNECT" or "DISCONNECT" to connect/disconnect the selected device.**
• **Select "DELETE," then "YES" to delete the selected device.**



You can set the unit to connect the Bluetooth device automatically when the unit is turned on. (See "AUTO CNNCT" on page 19.)

Using the Bluetooth cellular phone

1	SRC	**Select "BT-PHONE."**
2		**Enter the Bluetooth menu.**
3	—	**Make a call or setting using the Bluetooth setting menu. (See the following and page 19.)**

When a call comes in....

The source is automatically changed to "BT-PHONE."
• The display will flash in blue (see "RING COLOR" on page 21 for setting.)

When "AUTO ANSWER" is activated....

The unit answers the incoming calls automatically, see page 19.
• When "AUTO ANSWER" is deactivated, press any button (except ⏻/ATT/⏏/▲) to answer the incoming call.
• You can adjust the microphone volume level (see page 19).

To end the call

Hold any button (except ⏻/ATT/⏏/▲).

When a text message comes in....

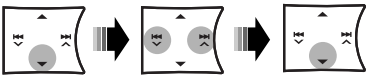
If the cellular phone is compatible with text message (notified through JVC Bluetooth adapter) and "MSG INFO" (message info) is set to "AUTO" (see page 19), the unit rings to inform you of the message arrival.
• "RCV MESSAGE" (receiving message) appears on the display and the display illuminate in blue (see "RING COLOR" on page 21 for setting).

Making a call

You can make a call using the following methods.

Select "BT-PHONE," then follow the following steps to make a call:
• To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

1 Enter the "DIAL" menu.



2 Select a calling method.

PHONE BOOK ↔ MISSED ↔ NUMBER
RECEIVED ↔ REDIAL ↔ VOICE DIAL

Call history:

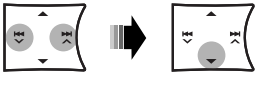
1 Select a call history (REDIAL*, RECEIVED*, MISSED*).
2 Then select a name (if it is acquired) or phone number.

Phone book:

1 Select "PHONE BOOK*".
The list of phone number appears.
2 Select a name from the list.

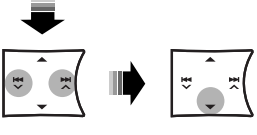
Direct dialing:

1 Select "NUMBER."



2 Enter the phone number.

[Turn]



* *Displays only when your cellular phone is equipped with these functions and is compatible with this unit.*

Voice dialing:

1 Select "VOICE DIAL."

"SAY NAME" appears on the display.

2 Speak the name you want to call.
- If your cellular phone does not support the voice recognition system, "ERROR" appears on the display.
- Using voice tags may be difficult in a noisy environment or during an emergency.

Using the Bluetooth audio player

SRC	**Select "BT-AUDIO."** If playback does not start, operate the Bluetooth audio player to start playback. • Operate the Bluetooth audio player to pause (if playback does not pause when you change the source).

	Reverse skip/forward skip
	Pause/start playback* * Operation may be different according to the connected Bluetooth audio player.
	Enter setting menu (Device list)

- Refer also to page 12 for connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device.

Bluetooth Information:
If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/> (English website only)

ENGLISH

Listening to the CD changer

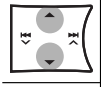
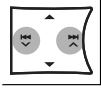
It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer (separately purchased) with your unit. You can connect a CD changer to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

- You can only play conventional CDs (including CD Text) and MP3 discs.

Preparation: Make sure "CH / IPOD" is selected in the "SRC SELECT" → "EXT IN" setting, see page 22.

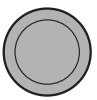
1	SRC	**Select "CD-CH."**
2	MENU	**Enter the list mode.**
3	[Turn] → [Press]	**Select a disc, folder, then the track.** Playback starts automatically. • If there is no disc on the selected tray, the unit beeps.

- To select a desired folder/track to start playback (for MP3 discs), repeat step **2** and **3** above until the desired folder/track is selected. The selection always start from disc number first.

	MP3: Select folders
	[Press] Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track

Selecting the playback modes

1 [Hold]

2  [Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT ↔ RANDOM

3 [Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT		
TRACK RPT	:	Repeats current track
FOLDER RPT	:	MP3: Repeats all tracks of current folder
DISC RPT	:	Repeats all tracks of the current disc
RANDOM		
FOLDER RND	:	MP3: Randomly plays all tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder
DISC RND	:	Randomly plays all tracks of current disc
ALL RND	:	Randomly plays all tracks of the discs in the magazine

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "**RPT OFF**" or "**RND OFF**."
- To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

Listening to the iPod

Before operating, connect the **Interface adapter for iPod**, KS-PD100 (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

Preparation: Make sure "CH / IPOD" is selected in the "SRC SELECT" → "EXT IN" setting, see page 22.

1	SRC	**Select "IPOD."**
2		**Select a song.** Playback starts automatically.

Selecting a track from the menu

1 Enter the main menu.

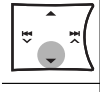
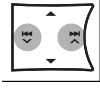
This mode will be canceled if no operations are done for about 5 seconds.

2 Select the desired menu.

PLAYLISTS ↔ ARTISTS ↔ ALBUMS ↔ SONGS ↔ GENRES ↔ COMPOSERS ↔ (back to the beginning)

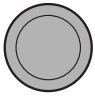
3 Confirm the selection.

- To return to the previous menu, press ▲.
- If a track is selected, playback starts automatically.

	Pause playback • To resume playback, press the button again.
	[Press] Select tracks [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track

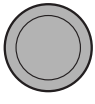
Selecting the playback modes

1



[Hold]

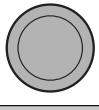
2



[Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT ↔ RANDOM

3



[Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT		
ONE RPT	:	Functions the same as "Repeat One" of the iPod.
ALL RPT	:	Functions the same as "Repeat All" of the iPod.
RANDOM		
ALBUM RND*	:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums" of the iPod.
SONG RND	:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs" of the iPod.

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "**RPT OFF**" or "**RND OFF**."
- To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

* *Functions only if you select "ALL" in "ALBUMS" of the main "MENU."*

Listening to the other external components

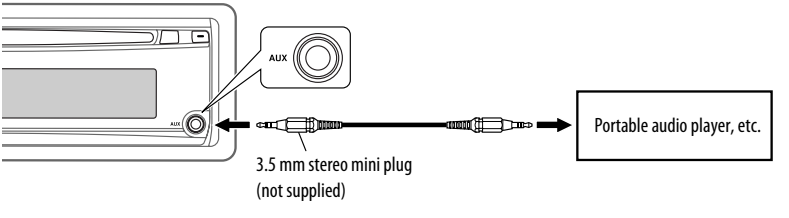
You can connect an external component to:

- CD changer jack on the rear of this unit using the following adapters:
  – **Line Input Adapter**, KS-U57 (separately purchsed)
  – **AUX Input Adapter**, KS-U58 (separately purchsed)
  Preparation: Make sure "EXT INPUT" is selected in the "SRC SELECT" → "EXT IN" setting, see page 22.

- AUX (auxiliary) input jack on the control panel.
  Preparation: Make sure "AUX ON" is selected in the "SRC SELECT" → "AUX IN" setting, see page 22.

1	SRC	**Select "EXT INPUT" or "AUX IN."**
2	—	**Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**
3	+ [Turn] −	**Adjust the volume.**
4	—	**Adjust the sound as you want (see pages 17 and 18).**

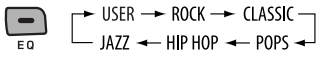
Connecting an external component to the AUX input jack



Selecting a preset sound mode

You can select a preset sound mode suitable to the music genre.

- See also page 20 ("EQ").



or

Selecting from Menu.

[Hold]

[Turn] → [Press]

Select "EQ"

Preset value setting for each sound mode

Sound mode	Preset value									
	BASS			MIDDLE			TREBLE			LOUD (loudness)
	Freq.	Level	Q	Freq.	Level	Q	Freq.	Level	Q	
USER	60 Hz	00	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.0	10.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	OFF
ROCK	100 Hz	+03	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	Q1.25	
CLASSIC	80 Hz	+01	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	Q1.25	
POPS	100 Hz	+02	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	+01	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	Q1.25	
HIP HOP	60 Hz	+04	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	−02	Q1.0	10.0 kHz	+01	Q1.25	
JAZZ	80 Hz	+03	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	Q1.25	

Freq.: Frequency Q: Q-slope

Storing your own sound mode

You can store your own adjustments in memory.

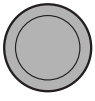
1 Select "USER" for "EQ."

[Hold]

[Turn] → [Press]

Select "EQ" → "USER"

2 While "USER" is shown on the display...



[Hold]

- If no operation is done for about 30 seconds, the operation will be canceled.

Continued on the next page

3 Select a tone.

[Turn] → [Press]

4 Adjust the sound elements of the selected tone.

[Turn] → [Press]

1 Adjust the frequency.
2 Adjust the level.
3 Adjust the Q-slope.

Sound elements	Range/selectable items		
	BASS	MIDDLE	TREBLE
Frequency	60 Hz 80 Hz 100 Hz 120 Hz	500 Hz 1.0 kHz 1.5 kHz 2.5 kHz	7.5 kHz 10.0 kHz 12.5 kHz 15.0 kHz
Level	–06 to +06	–06 to +06	–06 to +06
Q	Q0.5 Q1.0 Q1.5 Q2.0	Q0.75 Q1.0 Q1.25 Q1.5	Q0.75 Q1.25

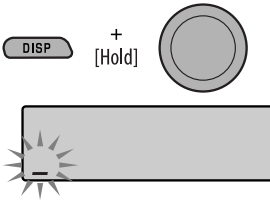
5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to adjust other sound characteristics.
The adjustment made will be stored automatically.

Title assignment

You can assign titles to 30 station frequencies (FM and AM) using 8 characters (maximum) for each title.

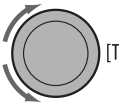
1 Select "FM" or "AM."

2 Show the title entry screen.



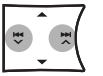
3 Assign a title.

1 Select a character.


[Turn]

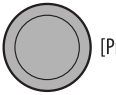
A	B	C	D	E	F	G
H	I	J	K	L	M	N
O	P	Q	R	S	T	U
V	W	X	Y	Z	0	1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	–	/	<	>	space	

2 Move to the next (or previous) character position.



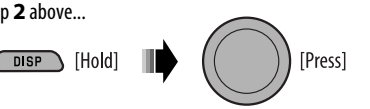
3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 until you finish entering the title.

4 Finish the procedure.


[Press]

To erase the entire title

In step **2** above...



Bluetooth settings

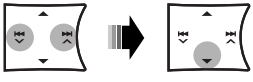
You can change the settings listed on the right column according to your preference.

1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."

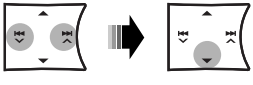
SRC

2 Enter the Bluetooth menu.

3 Select "SETTINGS."



4 Select a setting item.



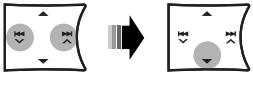
AUTO CNNCT ↔ AUTO ANSWER*1 ↔ MIC SETTING*1 ↔ MSG INFO*2 ↔ VERSION*3

*1 *Appears only when a Bluetooth phone is connected.*

*2 *Appears only when a Bluetooth phone is connected and it is compatible with text message (notified through JVC Bluetooth adapter).*

*3 *Bluetooth Audio: Shows only "Version."*

5 Change the setting accordingly.



Setting menu (__: Initial)

AUTO CNNCT (connect)

When the unit is turned on, the connection is established automatically with...

OFF: No Bluetooth device.

LAST: The last connected Bluetooth device.

ORDER: The available registered Bluetooth device found at first.

AUTO ANSWER

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

ON: The unit answers the incoming calls automatically.

OFF: The unit does not answer the calls automatically. Answer the calls manually.

REJECT: The unit rejects all incoming calls.

MSG INFO (message info)

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

AUTOMATIC: The unit informs you of the arrival of a message by ringing and displaying "RCV MESSAGE" (receiving message).

- The display illuminate in blue (see "RING COLOR" on page 21).

MANUAL: The unit does not inform you of the arrival of a message.

MIC SETTING (microphone setting)

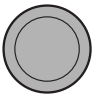
Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

Adjust microphone volume connected to the Bluetooth adapter, [LEVEL 01/02/03].

VERSION

The Bluetooth software and hardware versions are shown.

Menu operations

1	2	3
[Hold]	 [Turn] → [Press]	**Repeat step 2 if necessary.** • To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

Initial: **Underlined**

Category	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
DEMO	**DEMO** Display demonstration	• **DEMO ON** : Display demonstration will be activated automatically if no operation is done for about 20 seconds, [7]. • **DEMO OFF** : Cancels.
CLOCK	**CLOCK DISP***1 Clock display	• **CLOCK ON** : Clock time is shown on the display at all times when the power is turned off. • **CLOCK OFF** : Cancels; pressing DISP will show the clock time for about 5 seconds when the power is turned off, [7].
	CLOCK SET Clock setting	: Adjust the hour, then the minute, [7]. [Initial: 1:00]
EQ	**EQ** Equalizer	: Select a preset sound mode suitable to the music genre. **USER, ROCK, CLASSIC, POPS, HIP HOP, JAZZ**
DISPLAY	**DIMMER** Dimmer	• **DIMMER ON** : Dims the display and button illumination. • **DIMMER OFF** : Cancels.
	SCROLL*2 Scroll	• **SCROLL ONCE** : Scrolls the displayed information once. • **SCROLL AUTO** : Repeats scrolling (at 5-second intervals). • **SCROLL OFF** : Cancels. Pressing DISP for more than one second can scroll the display regardless of the setting.
	TAG DISPLAY Tag display	• **TAG ON** : Shows the Tag information while playing MP3/WMA tracks. • **TAG OFF** : Cancels.

*1 *If the power supply is not interrupted by turning off the ignition key of your car, it is recommended to select "*CLOCK OFF*" to save the car's battery.*

*2 *Some characters or symbols will not be shown correctly (or will be blanked) on the display.*

Category	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
TUNER	**MONO***3 Monaural mode	• **MONO ON** : Activate monaural mode to improve FM reception, but stereo effect will be lost, [8]. • **MONO OFF** : Restore the stereo effect.
	IF BAND Intermediate frequency band	• **AUTO** : Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) • **WIDE** : Subject to interference noises from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
COLOR	**COLOR 01 – COLOR 29, USER**	: Select one of the preset or user color for display and button (except **EQ**/⏻/ATT/⏏) illumination. (See also page 23 for USER color setting.)
MENU COLOR	**MENU COLOR** Menu color	• **OFF** : Cancels. • **ON** : Changes the display and button (except **EQ**/⏻/ATT/⏏) illumination during menu, list search and playback mode operations.
RING COLOR	**RING COLOR***4 Ring color	• **OFF** : Cancels. • **ON** : When a call comes in, the display will flash in blue. • The display will change to the original color when the call is answered or the incoming call stops. When the unit receive a text message, the display only illuminate in blue.
AUDIO	**FADER***5 Fader	**R06 – F06** : Adjust the front and rear speaker output balance. [Initial: 00]
	BALANCE*6 Balance	**L06 – R06** : Adjust the left and right speaker output balance. [Initial: 00]
	LOUD Loudness	• **LOUD OFF** : Cancels. • **LOUD ON** : Boost low and high frequencies to produce a well-balanced sound at a low volume level.
	VOL ADJUST Volume adjust	**VOL ADJ –05** — **VOL ADJ +05** [Initial: VOL ADJ 00] : Preset the volume adjustment level of each source (except FM), compared to the FM volume level. The volume level will automatically increase or decrease when you change the source. • Before making an adjustment, select the source you want to adjust. • "VOL ADJ FIX" appears on the display if "FM" is selected as the source.

*3 *Displayed only when the source is "FM."*

*4 *Displayed only when Bluetooth adapter, KS-BTA200 is connected.*

*5 *If you are using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to "00."*

*6 *This adjustment will not affect the subwoofer output.*

Continued on the next page

Category	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
AUDIO	**L/O MODE** Line output mode	• **SUB.W** : Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting a subwoofer (through an external amplifier). • **REAR** : Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting the speakers (through an external amplifier).
	SUB.W FREQ*7 Subwoofer cutoff frequency	• **LOW** : Frequencies lower than 72 Hz are sent to the subwoofer. • **MID** : Frequencies lower than 111 Hz are sent to the subwoofer. • **HIGH** : Frequencies lower than 157 Hz are sent to the subwoofer.
	SUB.W LEVEL*7 Subwoofer level	**SUB.W 00 — SUB.W 08** : Adjust the subwoofer output level. [Initial: SUB.W 04]
	BEEP Keypress tone	• **BEEP OFF** : Deactivates the keypress tone. • **BEEP ON** : Activates the keypress tone.
	AMP GAIN*8 Amplifier gain control	• **LOW POWER** : VOLUME 00 – VOLUME 30 (Select if the maximum power of each speaker is less than 50 W to prevent damaging the speaker.) • **HIGH POWER** : VOLUME 00 – VOLUME 50
SRC SELECT	**AM***9 AM station	• **AM OFF** : Disable "AM" in source selection. • **AM ON** : Enable "AM" in source selection, [4].
	EXT IN*10 External input	• **CH / IPOD** : To use a JVC CD changer, [14], or an Apple iPod, [15]. • **EXT INPUT** : To connect portable audio player to the CD changer jack, [16].
	AUX IN*11 Auxiliary input	• **AUX OFF** : Disable "AUX IN" in source selection. • **AUX ON** : Enable "AUX IN" in source selection, [4].

*7 *Displayed only when "*L/O MODE*" is set to "*SUB.W*."*

*8 *The volume level automatically changes to "VOLUME 30" if you change to "*LOW POWER*" with the volume level set higher than "VOLUME 30."*

*9 *Displayed only when any source other than "AM" is selected.*

*10 *Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—FM, AM, CD, Bluetooth, or AUX IN.*

*11 *Displayed only when any source other than "AUX IN" is selected.*

Color settings

Creating your own color —USER Color

You can create your own colors—"DAY COLOR" or "NIGHT COLOR."

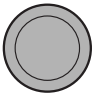
DAY COLOR: Used when "DIMMER" is set to "DIMMER OFF."

NIGHT COLOR: Used when "DIMMER" is set to "DIMMER ON."

1

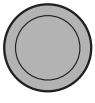
[Hold]

2 **Select "COLOR" → "USER."**



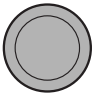
[Turn] → [Press]

3 **While "USER" is shown on the display...**



[Hold]

4



[Turn] → [Press]

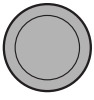
DAY COLOR ↔ NIGHT COLOR

5 **Select a primary color.**

[Turn] → [Press]

RED ↔ GREEN ↔ BLUE

6 **Adjust the level (00 to 31) of the selected primary color.**



[Turn] → [Press]

7 **Repeat steps 5 and 6 to adjust other primary colors.**

8 **Exit from the setting.**

- If no operation is done for about 30 seconds, the operation will be canceled.

ENGLISH

More about this unit

Basic operations

Turning on the power

- By pressing SRC button on the unit, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback also starts.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a track, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously next time you turn on the power.

General

- If you change the source while listening to a disc, playback stops.
  Next time you select "CD" as the playback source, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously.
- After ejecting a disc, "NO DISC" appears and you cannot operate some of the buttons. Insert another disc or press SRC to select another playback source.
- If no operation is done for about 30 seconds after pressing MENU button, the operation will be canceled.

Tuner operations

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
  - All previously stored stations are erased and the stations are stored anew.
  - When SSM is over, the station stored in the lowest preset number will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, the previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.

Disc operations

Caution for DualDisc playback

- The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

General

- This unit has been designed to reproduce CDs/CD Texts, and CD-Rs (Recordable)/CD-RWs (Rewritable) in audio CD (CD-DA), MP3 and WMA formats.
- When a disc is inserted upside down, "PLEASE" and "EJECT" appear alternately on the display. Press ⏏ to eject the disc.
- MP3 and WMA "tracks" (words "file" and "track" are used interchangeably) are recorded in "folders."
- While fast-forwarding or reversing on an MP3 or WMA disc, you can only hear intermittent sounds.

Playing a CD-R or CD-RW

- Use only "finalized" CD-Rs or CD-RWs.
- This unit can only play back files of the same type as those detected first if a disc includes both audio CD (CD-DA) files and MP3/WMA files.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some CD-Rs or CD-RWs may not play back on this unit because of their disc characteristics, or for the following reasons:
  - Discs are dirty or scratched.
  - Moisture condensation has occurred on the lens inside the unit.
  - The pickup lens inside the unit is dirty.
  - The files on the CD-R/CD-RW are written using the "Packet Write" method.
  - There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stained, scratched, warped, etc.).

- CD-RWs may require a longer readout time since the reflectance of CD-RWs is lower than that of regular CDs.
- Do not use the following CD-Rs or CD-RWs:
  – Discs with stickers, labels, or a protective seal stuck to the surface.
  – Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.

  Using these discs under high temperature or high humidity may cause malfunctions or damage to the unit.

Playing an MP3/WMA disc

- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files with the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3 files and for WMA files.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files meeting the conditions below:
  – Bit rate: 8 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency:
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG-1)
    24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG-2)
  – Disc format: ISO 9660 Level 1/Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name
- The maximum number of characters for file/folder names vary depending on the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3> or <.wma>).
  – ISO 9660 Level 1: up to 12 characters
  – ISO 9660 Level 2: up to 31 characters
  – Romeo: up to 128 characters
  – Joliet: up to 64 characters
  – Windows long file name: up to 128 characters
- This unit can recognize a total of 512 files, 255 folders, and 8 hierarchical levels.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).

  Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in the elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. In particular, this difference becomes noticeable after performing the search function.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded in MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded in an inappropriate format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded in lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, it is automatically inserted into the loading slot again to protect it from dust. Playback starts automatically.

Bluetooth operations

General

- While driving, do not perform complicated operation such as dialing the numbers, using phone book, etc. When you perform these operations, stop your car in a safe place.
- Some Bluetooth devices may not be connected to this unit depending on the Bluetooth version of the device.
- This unit may not work for some Bluetooth devices.
- Connecting condition may vary depending on the circumstances around you.
- When the unit is turned off, the device is disconnected.

Warning messages for Bluetooth operations

- **ERROR CNNCT** (Error Connection):
  The device is registered but the connection has failed. Use "CONNECT" to connect the device again. (See page 12.)

Continued on the next page

- **ERROR**
  Try the operation again. If "ERROR" appears again, check if the device supports the function you have tried.
- **UNFOUND**
  No available Bluetooth device is detected by "SEARCH."
- **LOADING**
  The unit is updating the phone book*.
  * *Displays only when your cellular phone is equipped with these functions and is compatible with this unit.*
- **PLEASE WAIT**
  The unit is preparing to use the Bluetooth function. If the message does not disappear, turn off and turn on the unit, then connect the device again (or reset the unit).
- **RESET 8**
  Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

iPod

- You can control the following types of iPods through the interface adapter.
  – iPod with dock connector (3rd Generation)
  – iPod with Click Wheel (4th Generation)
  – iPod mini
  – iPod photo
  – iPod nano*1
  – iPod video (5th Generation)*2
  – iPod classic 2007*2
  – iPod nano (3rd Generation)*2
  *1 *When you connect the iPod nano to the interface adapter, be sure to disconnect the headphones; otherwise, no sound is heard.*
  *2 *It is not possible to browse video files on the "Videos" menu.*
- If the iPod does not play correctly, please update your iPod software to the latest version. For details about updating your iPod, visit <http://www.apple.com>.
- When you turn on this unit, the iPod is charged through this unit.
- While the iPod is connected, all operations from the iPod are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
- If the text information includes more than 11 characters, it scrolls on the display. This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:
When operating an iPod, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/> (English website only)

Title assignment

- If you try to assign titles to more than 30 station frequencies, "NAME FULL" appears. Delete unwanted titles before assignment.

Menu operations

- If you change the "AMP GAIN" setting from "HIGH POWER" to "LOW POWER" while the volume level is set higher than "VOLUME 30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "VOLUME 30."

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

ENGLISH

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).
	• "AUX IN" cannot be selected.	Check the "SRC SELECT" → "AUX IN" setting (see page 22).
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually.
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the antenna firmly.
	• "AM" cannot be selected.	Check the "SRC SELECT" → "AM" setting (see page 22).
Disc playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played back. • Tracks on the CD-R/CD-RW cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized CD-R/CD-RW. • Finalize the CD-R/CD-RW with the component which you used for recording.
	• Disc can neither be played back nor ejected.	• Unlock the disc (see page 9). • Eject the disc forcibly (see page 3).
	• Disc sound is sometimes interrupted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc. • Check the cords and connections.
	• "NO DISC" appears on the display.	Insert a playable disc into the loading slot.
	• "PLEASE" and "EJECT" appear alternately on the display.	Press ⏏, then insert a disc correctly.

Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
MP3/WMA playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Use a disc with MP3/WMA tracks recorded in a format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, Level 2, Romeo, or Joliet. • Add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3 or WMA tracks.)
	• A longer readout time is required ("READING" keeps flashing on the display).	Do not use too many hierarchical levels and folders.
	• Tracks do not play back in the order you have intended them to play.	The playback order is determined when the files are recorded.
	• The elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc.
	• The correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (upper case), numbers, and a limited number of symbols.
Bluetooth*	• Bluetooth device does not detect the unit.	The unit can be connected with one Bluetooth cellular phone and one Bluetooth audio device at a time. While connecting a device, this unit cannot be detected from another device. Disconnect currently connected device and search again.
	• The unit does not detect the Bluetooth device.	• Check the Bluetooth setting of the device. • Search from the Bluetooth device. After the device detects the unit, select "OPEN" on the unit to connect the device. (See page 11.)

* *For Bluetooth operations, refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth Adapter.*

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Bluetooth	• The unit does not make pairing with the Bluetooth device.	• Enter the same PIN code for both the unit and target device. • Select the device name from "SPECIAL," then try to connect again. (See page 11.) • Try to pair/connect from the Bluetooth device.
	• Echo or noise occurs.	Adjust the microphone unit position.
	• Phone sound quality is poor.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth cellular phone. • Move the car to a place where you can get a better signal reception.
	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a Bluetooth audio device.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth audio device. • Disconnect the device connected for "BT-PHONE." • Turn off, then turn on the unit. • (When the sound is not yet restored,) connect the device again.
	• The connected audio device cannot be controlled.	Check whether the connected audio device supports AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile).
CD changer	• "NO DISC" appears on the display.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "NO MAGAZINE" appears on the display.	Insert the magazine.
	• "RESET 8" appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "RESET 1" – "RESET 7" appears on the display.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).

Continued on the next page

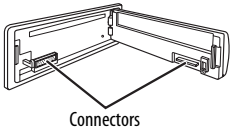
	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
iPod	• The iPod does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Update the firmware version. • Charge the battery.
	• The sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod.
	• "NO IPOD" appears on the display.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Charge the battery.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart the playback operation (see page 15).
	• No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano.	• Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano. • Update the firmware version of the iPod nano.
	• "NO FILES" appears on the display.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod.
	• "RESET 1" – "RESET 7" appears on the display.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod. Then, connect it again.
	• "RESET 8" appears on the display.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod.

- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Victor Company of Japan, Limited (JVC) is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors. To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connectors

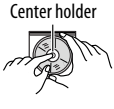
Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the unit in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the unit may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture has evaporated.

How to handle discs



When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc in its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

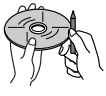
- Make sure to store discs in cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly.
If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvents (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

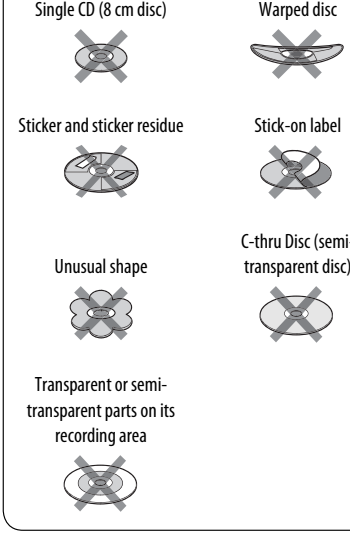
To play new discs



New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.

To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:



Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION		
Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.
Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
Tone Control Range:	Bass:	±12 dB (60 Hz, 80 Hz, 100 Hz, 120 Hz) Q0.5, Q1.0, Q1.5, Q2.0
	Middle:	±12 dB (500 Hz, 1.0 kHz, 1.5 kHz, 2.5 kHz) Q0.75, Q1.0, Q1.25, Q1.5
	Treble:	±12 dB (7.5 kHz, 10.0 kHz, 12.5 kHz, 15.0 kHz) Q0.75, Q1.25
Frequency Response:		40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		70 dB
Line-Out Level/Impedance:		2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
Subwoofer-Out Level/Impedance:		2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
Output Impedance:		1 kΩ
Other Terminal:		AUX (auxiliary) input jack, CD changer jack, Antenna input

TUNER SECTION		
Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
	AM:	531 kHz to 1 602 kHz
FM Tuner	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 µV/75 Ω)
	50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 µV/75 Ω)
	Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
	Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
	Stereo Separation:	30 dB
AM Tuner	Sensitivity:	20 µV
	Selectivity:	35 dB

CD PLAYER SECTION	
Type:	Compact disc player
Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)
Number of Channels:	2 channels (stereo)
Frequency Response:	5 Hz to 20 000 Hz
Dynamic Range:	96 dB
Signal-to-Noise Ratio:	98 dB
Wow and Flutter:	Less than measurable limit
MP3 Decoding Format: (MPEG1/2 Audio Layer 3)	Max. Bit Rate: 320 kbps
WMA (Windows Media® Audio) Decoding Format:	Max. Bit Rate: 192 kbps

GENERAL		
Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
Grounding System:		Negative ground
Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C
Dimensions (W × H × D): (approx.)	Installation Size:	182 mm × 52 mm × 160 mm
	Panel Size:	188 mm × 58 mm × 6 mm
Mass:		1.3 kg (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

在操作時遇到麻煩了？

請重置本機

參閱如何重置本機之頁

JVC

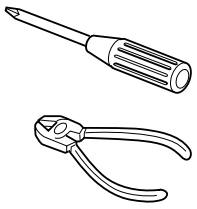
EN, CT

© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0808DTSMDTJEIN

KD-R406/KD-R405

Installation/Connection Manual
安裝/連接手冊



GET0571-010A
[UT]

0808DTSMDTJEIN
EN, CT
© 2008 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

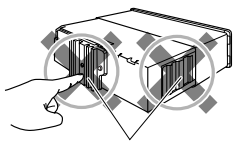
WARNINGS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect speakers with a maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "AMP GAIN" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 22 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short circuits, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



Heat sink / 散熱片

中文

本機僅可使用**直流 12 V**、**負極接地的電源系統**。如果您的車輛沒有這一電源系統，則需要一個電壓變換器，可以在 JVC 汽車音響分銷商處買到。

警告

為防止短路，建議在安裝本機之前，拔開電池的負極，並把所有電路都連接好。

- **安裝完畢後務必將本機的地線重新接至車身**。

注意：

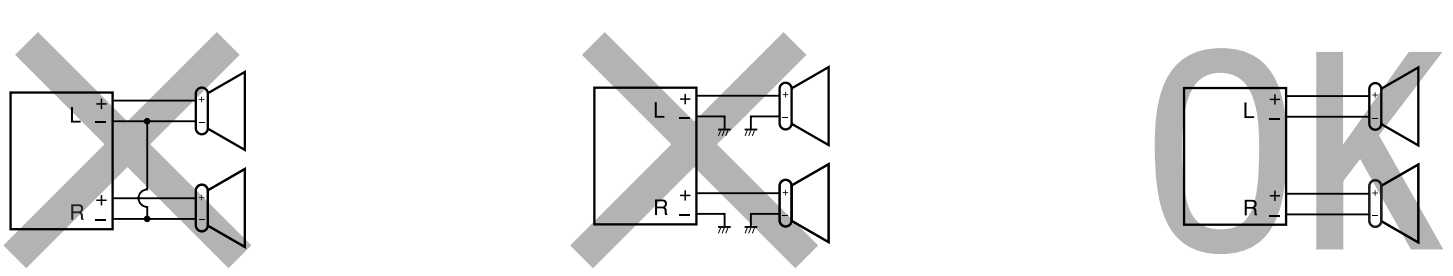
- 把保險絲更換為額定負荷值的保險絲。如果保險絲經常燒壞，請向 JVC 汽車音響分銷商詢問。
- 後置和前置揚聲器的最大輸入功率應大於 50 W，其阻抗為 **4 Ω - 8 Ω**。如果最大功率小於 50 W，請調校"AMP GAIN"設定值，以防止揚聲器損壞。（參閱使用說明書的第 22 頁。）
- 為防止電源短路，請用絕緣帶包住**未使用**電線的端子。
- 本機使用後，散熱片會很熱。因此，在移出本機時，小心不要觸摸散熱片。

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

電源和揚聲器接線注意事項：

- **切勿把揚聲器導線接頭接至電池，否則本機將會嚴重損壞。**
- 在把揚聲器導線接頭接至揚聲器之前，檢查您汽車上的揚聲器線路。

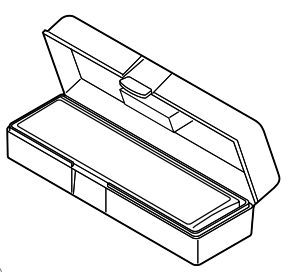


Parts list for installation and connection

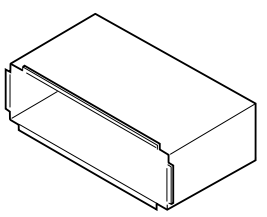
The following parts are provided for this unit. If any item is missing, consult your JVC car audio dealer immediately.

用於安裝和連接的零件清單

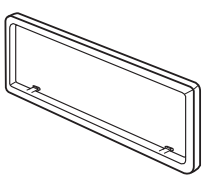
下列零件隨本機提供。若有任何遺漏，立刻咨詢您的 JVC 汽車音響經銷商。



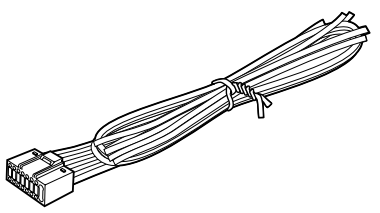
Ⓐ / Ⓑ
Hard case/Control panel
硬盒 / 控制面板



Ⓒ
Sleeve
外套機殼



Ⓓ
Trim plate
裝飾框

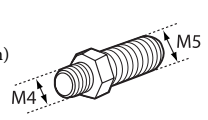


Ⓔ
Power cord
電路連接用的配線束

Ⓕ
Washer (ø5)
墊圈（ø5）

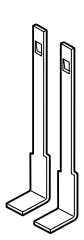
Ⓖ
Lock nut (M5)
鎖定螺母（M5）

Ⓗ
Mounting bolt (M4 × 5 mm; M5 × 12.5 mm)
緊固螺栓（M4 × 5 mm; M5 × 12.5 mm）



Ⓘ
Rubber cushion
橡膠防震墊

Ⓙ
Handles
板條型把手



Ⓚ
Remote controller
遙控器

RM-RK50

Ⓛ
Battery
電池

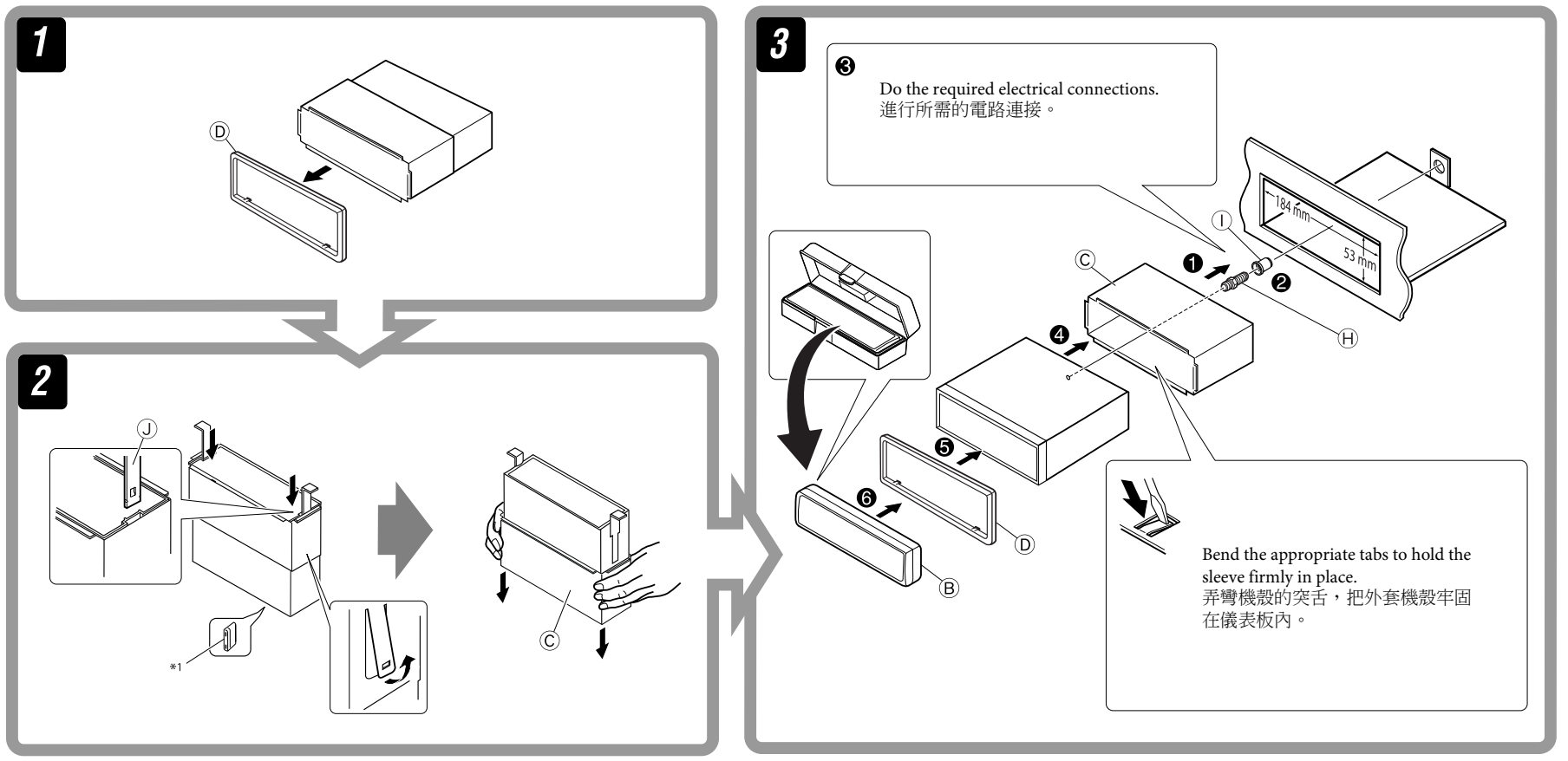
CR2025

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.
- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

安裝（裝設、固定在儀表板內）

下面的圖解表示了典型的安裝程序。如果您有問題，或需要有關配套元件的資料，請向 JVC 汽車音響分銷商或配套元件供應公司詢問。
- 如果您不能確定如何正確地安裝本機，應請合格的技術人員來安裝。

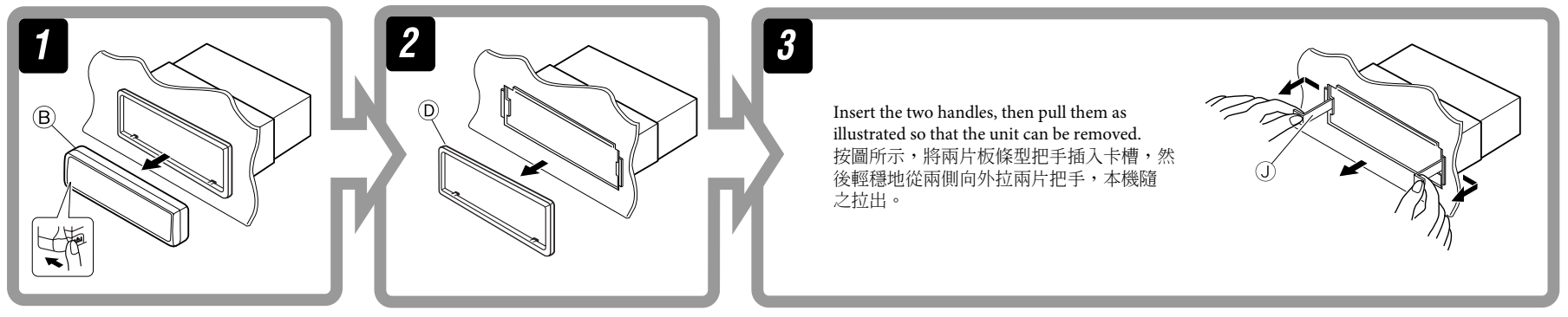


Removing the unit

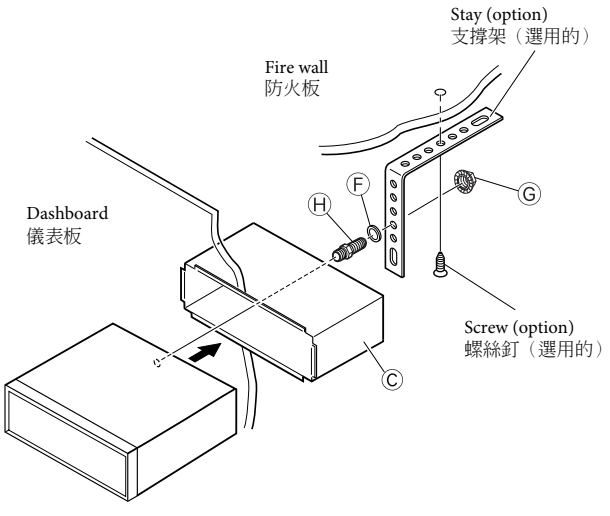
Before removing the unit, release the rear section.

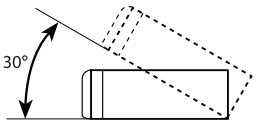
拆卸本機

在拆卸本機前，應將本機後部的固定和連接部分鬆開。



When using the optional stay / 若選用支撐架

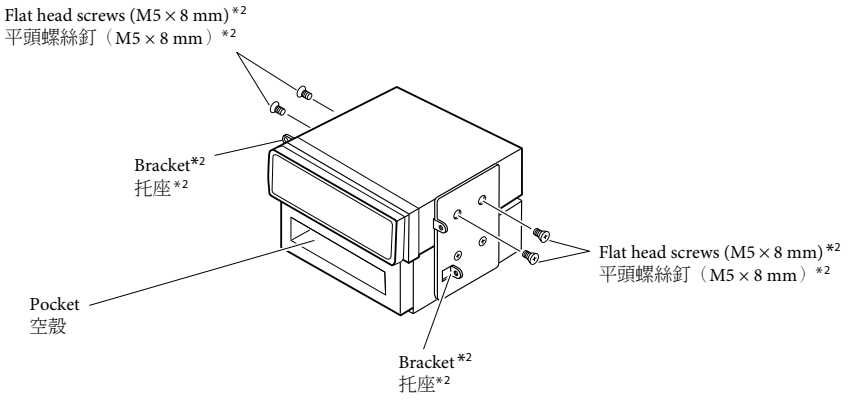




Install the unit at an angle of less than 30°.
將本機安裝在少於 30° 的角度。

When installing the unit without using the sleeve / 若不使用外套機殼安裝本機

In a Toyota car for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place.
以豐田牌（TOYOTA）汽車為例：首先取出汽車收音機，然後將本機裝入其空出的位置。



Note : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm-long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

注意 ：把本機安裝在托座上時，務必使用 8 mm 長的螺絲釘。如使用過長的螺絲釘，會損壞本機。

*1 When you stand the unit, be careful not to damage the fuse on the rear.
*2 Not supplied for this unit.

*1 您豎起本機時，小心不要損壞底部的保險絲。
*2 不隨本機提供。

ENGLISH

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

A Typical connections / 典型的接線方法

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

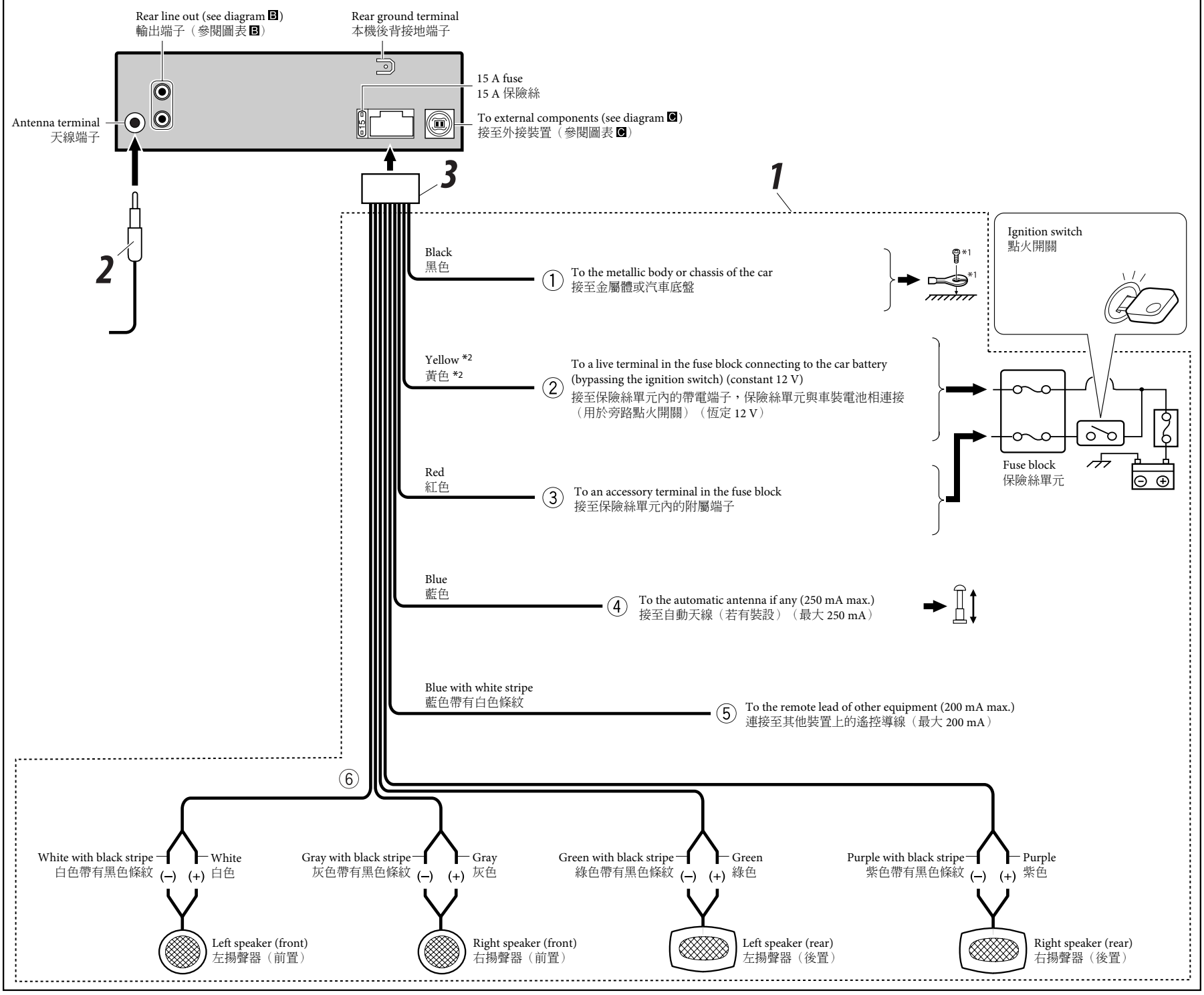
1 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
2 Connect the antenna cord.
3 Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

中文

電路連接

接線前：仔細檢查汽車內的線路。不正確的接線會導致本機嚴重損壞。
電源線的引線和車身的連接器引線在顏色上可能有所不同。

1 依照下圖所示之次序連接電源線的顏色導線。
2 將天線的電線連接起來。
3 最後，把配線束的插頭插在本機上。



*1 Not supplied for this unit.
*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise the power cannot be turned on.

*1 不隨本機提供。
*2 本機未安裝時，進行工作狀況檢查之前，必須把這導線接上，否則不能開啟電源。

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
  * Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.**
  * Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.**
  * Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.**
  * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  * Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
  * Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **This unit becomes hot.**
  * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  * Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **This unit does not work at all.**
  * Have you reset your unit?

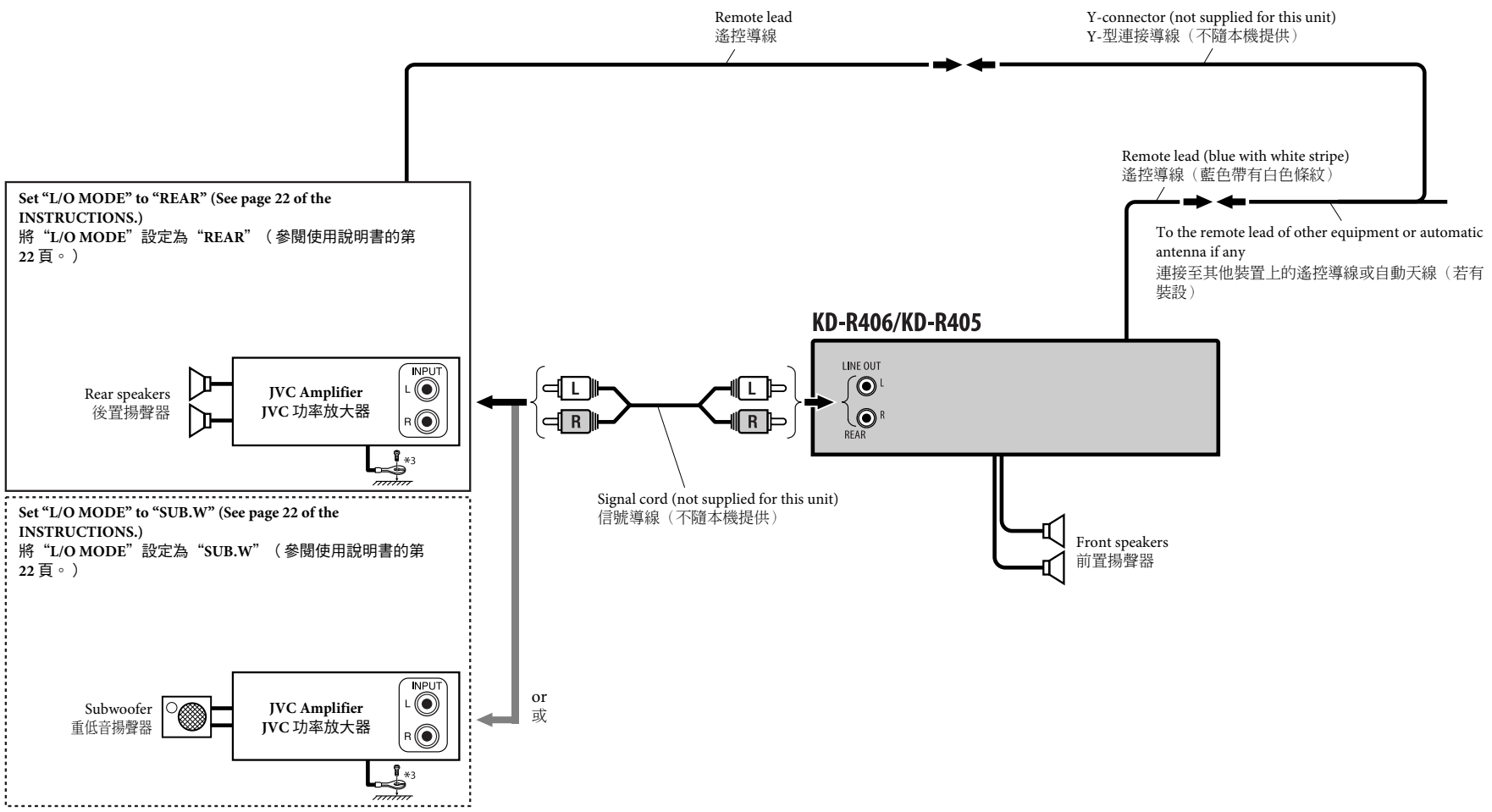
故障排除

- **保險絲燒斷。**
  * 檢查紅色導線接頭和黑色導線接頭是否接觸正確？
- **電源不能接通。**
  * 檢查黃色導線接頭是否接上？
- **揚聲器沒有聲音。**
  * 檢查揚聲器輸出導線接頭是否短路？
- **聲音失真。**
  * 檢查揚聲器輸出端子是否接地？
  * 檢查揚聲器的左（L）、右（R）端子的負極"–"是否共同接地？
- **噪音干擾音響。**
  * 後接地端子與車身是否使用較短和較厚的電線連接？
- **本機發熱。**
  * 檢查揚聲器輸出端子是否接地？
  * 檢查揚聲器的左（L）、右（R）端子的負極"–"是否共同接地？
- **本機完全不能操作。**
  * 您是否已經重置您的機組？

B Connecting the external amplifier or subwoofer/ 連接至外接功率放大器或重低音揚聲器

You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.
- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**

您可以連接功率放大器以提昇尊車的音響系統。
- 將遙控導線（藍色帶有白色條紋）和其他裝置上的遙控導線連接起來，以便可以從本機進行遙控。
- **將揚聲器和本機拔開，再接上功率放大器。將本機的揚聲器接線放置不用。**



C Connecting the external components / 連接其他外接裝置

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapter.

CAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

當連接外接裝置時，另參考隨裝置和轉換器附帶的使用手冊。

小心：
連接外接裝置之前，先確定本機已經關閉。

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack.

JVC component	Model name
CD changer (CD-CH)	CH-X1500, etc.

您可以連接以下 JVC 裝置至 CD 換碟器插孔。

JVC 裝置	型號名稱
CD 換碟器（CD-CH）	CH-X1500 等

You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters.
- Connection cords may need to be purchased separately.

Component	Adapter	Model name
Bluetooth device	Bluetooth adapter	KS-BTA200
iPod	Interface adapter for iPod	KS-PD100
Portable audio player with line output jacks	Line input adapter	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm stereo mini jack	AUX input adapter	KS-U58

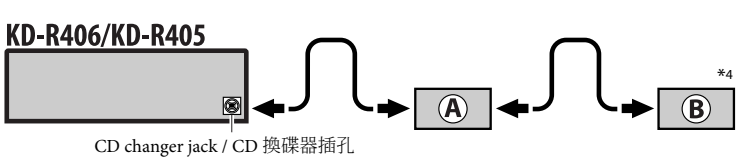
您也可以從不同的 JVC 轉換器連接以下裝置。
- 連接導線可能需要另購。

裝置	轉換器	型號名稱
Bluetooth 裝置	Bluetooth 轉換器	KS-BTA200
iPod	iPod 端子轉換器	KS-PD100
帶有線性輸出插孔的手提式音頻播放機	線性輸入轉換器	KS-U57
帶有 3.5 mm 立體聲迷你型插孔的手提式音頻播放機	AUX 輸入轉換器	KS-U58

When connecting more than one component (maximum: two), it is recommended that you connect the components in series as explained below.

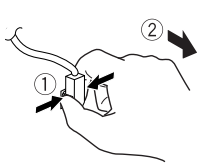
當連接不止一件裝置（最多：兩件）時，建議您按以下方法串聯裝置。

When connecting two components in series / 當串聯兩件外接裝置時



Ⓐ **KS-BTA200**
Ⓑ*4 **CD-CH / KS-PD100 / KS-U57 / KS-U58**

To disconnect the connector / 想要拔開連接器



Hold the connector tightly (①), then pull it out (②).
緊按連接器（①），再將其拔出（②）。

iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

iPod 是 Apple Inc.（蘋果公司）在美國及其他國家註冊的商標。

*3 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.
*4 To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 22 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

*3 將地線與金屬車體或者汽車底盤緊密連接，連接處應該沒有被油漆覆蓋（如果已塗上油漆，在連接電線前，將油漆刮去）。如果不這樣做，可能會損壞本機。
*4 想要使用這些裝置，正確設定外部輸入設定（參閱使用說明書的第 22 頁）。

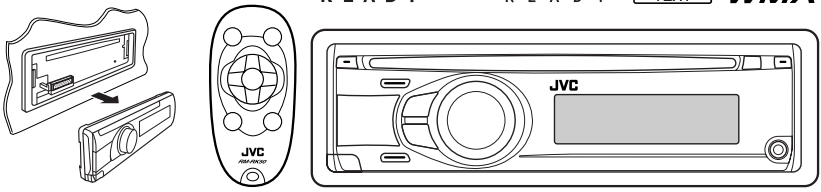
JVC

ENGLISH

ESPAÑOL

CD RECEIVER KD-S26

RECEPTOR CON CD KD-S26



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 4.
Para cancelar la demostración en pantalla, consulte la página 4.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
Para la instalación y las conexiones, refiérase al manual separado.

For customer Use:
Enter below the Model No. and Serial No. which are located on the top or bottom of the cabinet. Retain this information for future reference.

Model No.

Serial No.

INSTRUCTIONS
MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES

GET0642-001A
[J]

ENGLISH

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

INFORMATION (For U.S.A.)

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

– Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
– Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
– Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
– Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Caution:

Changes or modifications not approved by JVC could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** (For U.S.A.) Visible and/or invisible class II laser radiation when open. Do not stare into beam.
   (For Canada) Visible and/or invisible class 1M laser radiation when open. Do not view directly with optical instruments.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION	ATTENTION	AVISO	VARNING	注意	CAUTION
VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS 1M LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS. IEC60825-1:2001 (ENG)	RAYONNEMENT LASER VISIBLE ET/OU INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 1M UNE FOIS OUVERT. NE PAS REGARDER DIRECTEMENT AVEC DES INSTRUMENTS OPTIQUES. (FRA)	RADIACIÓN LÁSER DE CLASE 1M VISIBLE Y/O INVISIBLE CUANDO ESTÁ ABIERTO. NO MIRAR DIRECTAMENTE CON INSTRUMENTAL ÓPTICO. (ESP)	SYNLIG OCH/ELLER OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING, KLASS 1M, NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD. BETRAKTA EJ STRÅLEN MED OPTISKA INSTRUMENT. (SWE)	ここを開くと可視及び/または不可視のクラス1M レーザー放射が出ます。光学装置で直接見ないでください。 (JPN)	VISIBLE AND/OR INVISIBLE CLASS II LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM. FDA 21 CFR (ENG)

[European Union only]

Warning:

If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look around carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.

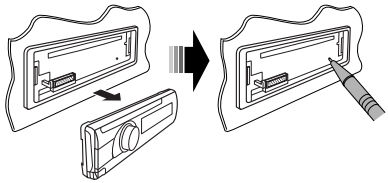
For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car...

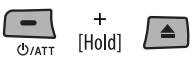
If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

How to reset your unit



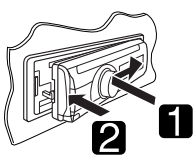
- *Your preset adjustments will also be erased (except the registered Bluetooth device, see page 10).*

How to forcibly eject a disc

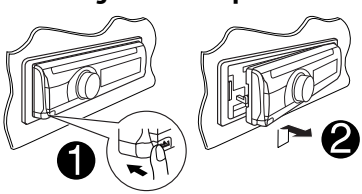


- *Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.*
- *If this does not work, reset your unit.*

Attaching the control panel



Detaching the control panel



Caution on volume setting:

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

CONTENTS

How to reset your unit 3
How to forcibly eject a disc 3
Attaching the control panel 3
Detaching the control panel 3
Canceling the display demonstration 4
Setting the clock 4

OPERATIONS

Basic operations 5
- Using the control panel 5
- Using the remote controller (RM-RK50) 6

Listening to the radio 8
Disc operations 9

EXTERNAL DEVICES

Using the Bluetooth® devices 10
- Using the Bluetooth cellular phone 12
- Using the Bluetooth audio player 13

Listening to the HD Radio™ Broadcast 14
Listening to the CD changer 15
Listening to the satellite radio 16
Listening to the iPod 18
Listening to the other external components 19

SETTINGS

Selecting a preset sound mode 20
Title assignment 21
Bluetooth settings 22
Menu operations 23
Color settings 26

REFERENCES

More about this unit 27
Troubleshooting 30
Maintenance 35
Specifications 36

ENGLISH

Canceling the display demonstration

1 **Turn on the power.**

2

DEMO
(Initial setting)

3

DEMO ON

4 **Select** "DEMO OFF."

DEMO OFF

5

DEMO

6 **Finish the procedure.**

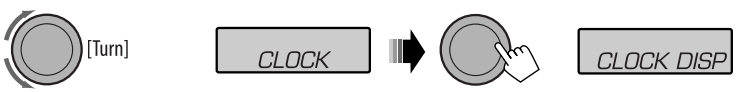
Setting the clock

1 **Turn on the power.**

2

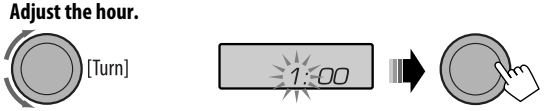
DEMO
(Initial setting)

3 **Select** "CLOCK."

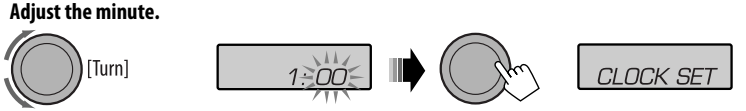


4 **Select** "CLOCK SET."

5 **Adjust the hour.**



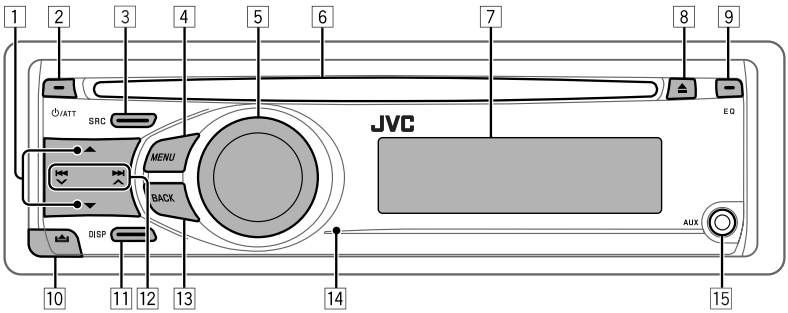
6 **Adjust the minute.**



7 **Finish the procedure.**

Basic operations

Using the control panel



1 • **FM/AM**: Select preset station.
• **HD RADIO**: Select channel.
• **SIRIUS/XM**: Select category.
• **CD/CD-CH**: Select folder.
• **IPOD**: Enter the main menu/Pause playback/Confirm selection.
• **BT-PHONE/BT-AUDIO**: Enter/go back to previous Bluetooth menu.

2 • Turn on the power.
• Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).
• Turn off the power [Hold].

3 Select the source.
FM/HD RADIO FM*1 → **AM/HD RADIO AM***1, *2 → **SIRIUS***3**/XM***3 → **CD***3 → **CD-CH***3**/IPOD***3 (or **EXT INPUT**) → **BT-PHONE***3 → **BT-AUDIO***3 → **AUX IN***2 → (back to the beginning)

4 • Enter list operations.
• Enter Menu setting [Hold].

5 • Control the volume or selection [Turn].*4
• Confirm the selection [Press].*4
• **FM/HD Radio**: Enter SSM preset mode [Hold].*4
• **CD/CD-CH/IPOD**: Enter playback mode [Hold].*4

6 Loading slot

7 Display window

8 Eject disc.

9 Select the sound mode.

10 Detach the panel.

11 When the power is turned off: Check the current clock time when "CLOCK DISP" is set to "CLOCK OFF," (see page 23).
When the power is turned on: Change the display information of the current source.

12 • **FM/AM/HD RADIO/SIRIUS/XM**: Search for station/channel.
• **CD/CD-CH**: Select track.
• **IPOD**: Select track.
• **BT-PHONE/BT-AUDIO**: Select setting item/registered device.

13 Return to the previous menu.

14 Remote sensor

15 AUX (auxiliary) input jack

*1 *When the HD Radio tuner box is connected, the built-in tuner of this unit will be disabled. To listen to the HD Radio broadcast, refer to "Listening to the radio" on page 8. For more features, see page 14.*

*2 *You cannot select these sources if they were disabled in the Menu (see "Menu operations" on page 26).*

*3 *You cannot select these sources if they are not ready or not connected.*

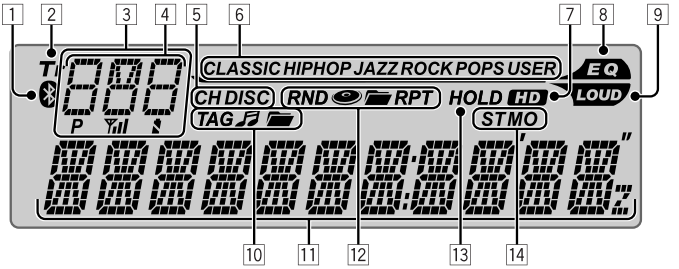
*4 *Also known as "Control dial" in this manual.*

You can change the display and button illumination (see "COLOR" on page 24).

Continued on the next page

ENGLISH

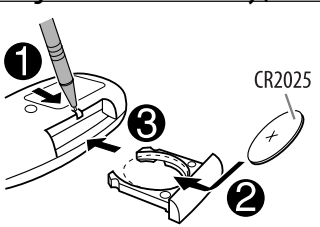
Display window



1. Bluetooth indicator
2. Tr (track) indicator
3. Status of Bluetooth device
   (Device number, [P: 1 – 5]; signal strength, [: 0 – 3]*; battery reminder, [: 0 – 3]*)
   * *As the number increases, the signal/battery power becomes stronger.*
4. Source display / Track number / Folder number / Time countdown indicator
5. Playback source indicators—CH (CD changer), DISC
6. Sound mode indicators—CLASSIC, HIP HOP, JAZZ, ROCK, POPS, USER
7. HD (HD Radio) indicator
8. EQ (equalizer) indicator
9. LOUD (loudness) indicator
10. Disc information indicators—
    TAG (Tag information), (track/file), (folder)
11. Main display
12. Playback mode / item indicators—RND (random), (disc), (folder), RPT (repeat)
13. HOLD indicator
14. Tuner reception indicators—ST (stereo), MO (monaural)

Using the remote controller (RM-RK50)

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)



Caution:

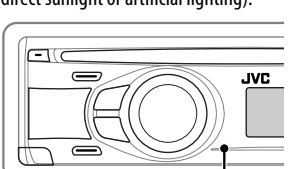
- Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.
- Battery shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire, or the like.

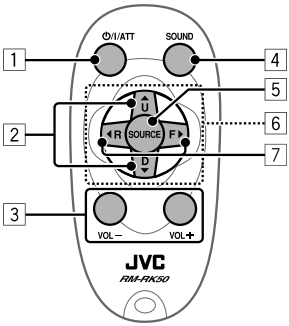
If the effectiveness of the remote controller decreases, replace the battery.

For USA-California Only:
This product contains a CR Coin Cell Lithium Battery which contains Perchlorate Material—special handling may apply.
See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate

Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).





1 • Turns the power on if pressed briefly or attenuates the sound when the power is on.
• Turns the power off if pressed and held.

2 • Changes the tuner/HD Radio preset stations.
• Changes the folder of the MP3/WMA.
• While playing an MP3 disc on an MP3-compatible CD changer:
– Changes the disc if pressed briefly.
– Changes the folder if pressed and held.
• While listening to the satellite (SIRIUS or XM) radio:
– Changes the categories.
• While listening to an Apple iPod:
– Pauses or resumes playback with D ▼.
– Enters the main menu with ▲ U.
(Now ▲ U/D ▼/◄ R/F ► work as the menu selecting buttons.)*

* ▲ U : *Returns to the previous menu.*
D ▼ : *Confirms the selection.*

3 Adjusts the volume level.
4 Selects the sound mode.
5 Selects the source.
6 For Bluetooth cellular phone:
– Answers calls if pressed briefly.
– Rejects calls if pressed and held.

7 • Searches for stations if pressed briefly.
• Fast-forwards or reverses the track if pressed and held.
• Changes the tracks if pressed briefly.
• While listening to the satellite radio:
– Changes the channels if pressed briefly.
– Changes the channels rapidly if pressed and held.
• While listening to an iPod (in menu selecting mode):
– Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press D ▼ to confirm the selection.)
– Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.
• Reverse skip/forward skip for Bluetooth audio.

Warning (to prevent accidents and damage):

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent.
- Do not leave the remote controller in a place (such as dashboards) exposed to direct sunlight for a long time.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach.
- Do not recharge, short, disassemble, heat the battery, or dispose of it in a fire.
- Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
- Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
- Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.

Listening to the radio

1	SRC	**Select "FM" or "AM."**
2		**Search for a station to listen—Auto Search.** Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until "M" flashes on the display, then press it repeatedly. • When receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength, "ST" lights up on the display.

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

• See also page 24.

[Hold]

[Turn] → [Press]

Select "TUNER" → "MONO" → "MONO ON"

Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.
• "MO" lights up on the display.

To restore the stereo effect, repeat the same procedure to select "MONO OFF." The MO indicator goes off.

Change the display information

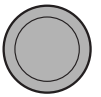
Station name* → Frequency → Clock → (back to the beginning)

* *If no title is assigned to a station, "NO NAME" appears. To assign a title to a station, see page 21.*

FM station automatic presetting —SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

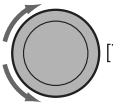
You can preset up to 18 stations for FM.

1 **While listening to a station...**



[Hold]

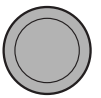
2 **Select the preset number range you want to store.**



[Turn]

SSM 01–06 ◄► SSM 07–12 ◄► SSM 13–18

3



[Press]

Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically.
• If an HD Radio tuner box is connected, you can also search and store the AM stations.

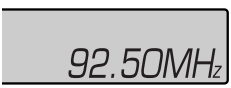
To preset other 6 stations, repeat from step **1** again.

Manual presetting (FM/AM)

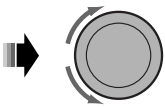
You can preset up to 18 stations for FM and 6 stations for AM.

Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.50 MHz into preset number "04."

1



2 **Select preset number "04."**



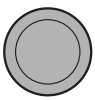
[Turn]

3

[Hold]

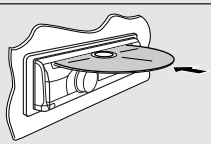
Selecting preset station

or



[Turn] → [Press]

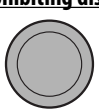
Disc operations

1		**Turn on the power.**
2		**Insert a disc.** All tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

Stop playing and ejecting the disc

- "NO DISC" appears. Press SRC to listen to another playback source.

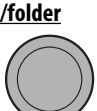
Prohibiting disc ejection



\+ [Hold]

To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure.

Selecting a track/folder



[Turn] → [Press]

- For MP3/WMA discs, select the desired folder, then the desired track by performing the control dial.
- To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

Change the display information

Audio CD/CD Text:

Disc title/performer*1 → Track title*1 → Current track number with the elapsed playing time → Current track number with the clock time → (back to the beginning)

MP3/WMA:

Album name/performer (folder name)*2 → Track title (file name)*2 → Current track number with the elapsed playing time → Current track number with the clock time → (back to the beginning)

*1 *If the current disc is an audio CD, "NO NAME" appears.*

*2 *If an MP3/WMA file does not have Tag information or "*TAG DISPLAY*" is set to "*TAG OFF*" (see page 24), folder name and file name appear.*

Continued on the next page

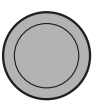
Pressing (or holding) the following buttons allows you to...

	MP3/WMA: Select folder
	[Press]Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track

Selecting the playback modes

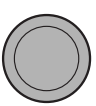
You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time.

1



[Hold]

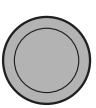
2



[Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT ↔ RANDOM

3



[Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT		
TRACK RPT	:	Repeats current track
FOLDER RPT	:	MP3/WMA: Repeats current folder
RANDOM		
FOLDER RND	:	MP3/WMA: Randomly plays all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders
ALL RND	:	Randomly plays all tracks

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "**RPT OFF**" or "**RND OFF**."
- To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

Using the Bluetooth® devices

For Bluetooth operations, it is required to connect the **Bluetooth adapter** (KS-BTA200) (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- Refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth adapter and the Bluetooth device.
- Refer to the list (included in the box) to check the countries where you may use the Bluetooth® function.

To use a Bluetooth device through the unit ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO") for the first time, you need to establish Bluetooth wireless connection between the unit and the device.

- Once the connection is established, it is registered in the unit even if you reset your unit. Up to five devices can be registered in total.
- Only one device can be connected at a time for each source ("BT-PHONE" and "BT-AUDIO").

Registering a Bluetooth device

Registration (Pairing) methods

Use either of the following items in the Bluetooth menu to register and establish the connection with a device.

- Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO" as the source to operate the Bluetooth menu.

OPEN	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the Bluetooth device.
SEARCH	Make the unit ready to establish a new Bluetooth connection. Connection is established by operating the unit.

Registering using "OPEN"

Preparation: Operate the device to turn on its Bluetooth function.

1 **Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."**

SRC

2 **Select "NEW DEVICE."**

3 **Select "OPEN."**

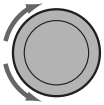
4 **Enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number) code to the unit.**

- You can enter any number you like (1-digit to 16-digit number). [Initial: 0000]

* *Some devices have their own PIN code. Enter the specified PIN code to the unit.*

1 Move to the next (or previous) number position.

2 Select a number.



[Turn]

3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 until you finish entering a PIN code.

4 Confirm the entry.

"OPEN.." flashes on the display.

5 **Use the Bluetooth device to search and connect.**

On the device to be connected, enter the same PIN code you have just entered for this unit.
"CONNECTED" appears on the display.
Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.

The device remains registered even after you disconnect the device. Use "CONNECT" (or activate "AUTO CNNCT") to connect the same device from next time on. (See the following and page 22.)

Connecting a device

Perform steps **1** and **2** on left column, then...

1 • **Select "SEARCH" to search for available devices.**
The unit searches and displays the list of the available devices. If no available device is detected, "UNFOUND" appears.
• **Select "SPECIAL" to connect a special device.**
The unit displays the list of the preset devices.

2 **Select a device you want to connect.**

3 • **For available devices...**
Enter the specific PIN code of the device to the unit.
Refer to the instructions supplied with the device to check the PIN code.
Use the Bluetooth device to connect.
Now connection is established and you can use the device through the unit.
• **For special device...**
Use "OPEN" or "SEARCH" to connect.

Continued on the next page

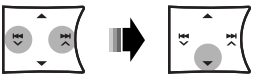
Connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device

1 **Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."**

SRC

2 **Select a registered device you want to connect/disconnect/delete.**

3 • **Select "CONNECT" or "DISCONNECT" to connect/disconnect the selected device.**
• **Select "DELETE," then "YES" to delete the selected device.**



You can set the unit to connect the Bluetooth device automatically when the unit is turned on. (See "AUTO CNNCT" on page 22.)

Using the Bluetooth cellular phone

1	SRC	**Select "BT-PHONE."**
2		**Enter the Bluetooth menu.**
3	—	**Make a call or setting using the Bluetooth setting menu. (See the following and page 22.)**

When a call comes in....

The source is automatically changed to "BT-PHONE."
- The display will flash in blue (see "RING COLOR" on page 24 for setting.)

When "AUTO ANSWER" is activated....

The unit answers the incoming calls automatically, see page 22.
- When "AUTO ANSWER" is deactivated, press any button (except ⏻/ATT/⏏/▲) to answer the incoming call.
- You can adjust the microphone volume level (see page 22).

To end the call

Hold any button (except ⏻/ATT/⏏/▲).

When a text message comes in....

If the cellular phone is compatible with text message (notified through JVC Bluetooth adapter) and "MSG INFO" (message info) is set to "AUTO" (see page 22), the unit rings to inform you of the message arrival.
- "RCV MESSAGE" (receiving message) appears on the display and the display illuminate in blue (see "RING COLOR" on page 24 for setting).

Making a call

You can make a call using the following methods.

Select "BT-PHONE," then follow the following steps to make a call:
- To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

1 Enter the "DIAL" menu.

2 Select a calling method.

PHONE BOOK ⟷ MISSED ⟷ NUMBER ⟷ RECEIVED ⟷ REDIAL ⟷ VOICE DIAL

Call history:

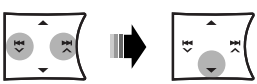
1 Select a call history (REDIAL*, RECEIVED*, MISSED*).

2 Then select a name (if it is acquired) or phone number.

Phone book:

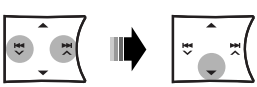
1 Select "PHONE BOOK*".
The list of phone number appears.

2 Select a name from the list.

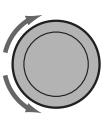


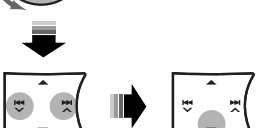
Direct dialing:

1 Select "NUMBER."



2 Enter the phone number.


[Turn]



* *Displays only when your cellular phone is equipped with these functions and is compatible with this unit.*

Voice dialing:

1 Select "VOICE DIAL."

"SAY NAME" appears on the display.

2 Speak the name you want to call.

- If your cellular phone does not support the voice recognition system, "ERROR" appears on the display.
- Using voice tags may be difficult in a noisy environment or during an emergency.

Using the Bluetooth audio player

	Select "BT-AUDIO." If playback does not start, operate the Bluetooth audio player to start playback. • Operate the Bluetooth audio player to pause (if playback does not pause when you change the source).

	Reverse skip/forward skip
	Pause/start playback* * Operation may be different according to the connected Bluetooth audio player.
	Enter setting menu (Device list)

- Refer also to page 12 for connecting/disconnecting/deleting a registered device.

Bluetooth Information:
If you wish to receive more information about Bluetooth, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/> (English website only)

Listening to the HD Radio™ Broadcast

Before operating, connect **HD Radio tuner box**, KT-HD300 (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

What is HD Radio Technology?

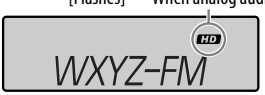
HD Radio Technology can deliver high-quality digital sound—AM digital will have FM-like quality (in stereo) and FM digital will have CD-like quality—with static-free and clear reception. Furthermore, stations can offer text and data, such as artist names and song titles.

- When the HD Radio tuner box is connected, it can also receive conventional analog broadcasts.
- Many HD Radio stations also offer more than one channel of programming. This service is called multicasting.
- To find HD Radio stations in your area, visit <http://www.hdradio.com/>.

Refer also to pages 8 and 9 for basic radio operations.

When receiving an HD Radio station...

[Lights up] When digital audio is broadcast
[Flashes] When analog audio is broadcast



Station Call Sign appears.

When receiving HD Radio multicast channels...

First four letters of Call Sign — Channel number

Select your desired channel.

HD1 ⟷ HD2 ⟷ HD8

"LINKING" appears while linking to a multicast channel.

Searching for HD Radio stations only

[Hold]

Changing HD Radio reception mode

While receiving an HD Radio broadcast, the unit receives digital or analog audio automatically due to the receiving condition.

While listening to an HD Radio station...

• See also page 24.

[Hold] → [Turn] → [Press]

Select "TUNER" → "BLEND HOLD" → "AUTO"/"DIGITAL"/"ANALOG"

[Lights up] When holding the digital reception
[Flashes] When holding the analog reception

- If no sound can be heard with AUTO, change the setting to ANALOG or DIGITAL.
- The setting automatically changes to AUTO if you tuned in to or change to another station, or if you turned off the power.
- This setting cannot take effect for the conventional FM/AM stations.
- If the radio station forces the reception mode to digital, the HOLD indicator flashes.

Change the display information

Call Sign*1 → Frequency → Title/artist/album name of the current segment*2 → Clock → (back to the beginning)

*1 *"****-FM" or "****" appears when no Call Sign is received.*

*2 *"NO TEXT" appears when no text is received.*

Listening to the CD changer

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer (separately purchased) with your unit. You can connect a CD changer to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

- You can only play conventional CDs (including CD Text) and MP3 discs.

Preparation: Make sure "CH / IPOD" is selected in the "SRC SELECT" → "EXT IN" setting, see page 26.

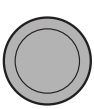
1	SRC	**Select "CD-CH."**
2	MENU	**Enter the list mode.**
3	[Turn] → [Press]	**Select a disc, folder, then the track.** Playback starts automatically. • If there is no disc on the selected tray, the unit beeps.

- To select a desired folder/track to start playback (for MP3 discs), repeat step **2** and **3** above until the desired folder/track is selected. The selection always start from disc number first.

	MP3: Select folders
	[Press] Select track [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track

Selecting the playback modes

1



[Hold]

2

[Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT ↔ RANDOM

3

[Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT		
TRACK RPT	:	Repeats current track
FOLDER RPT	:	MP3: Repeats all tracks of current folder
DISC RPT	:	Repeats all tracks of the current disc
RANDOM		
FOLDER RND	:	MP3: Randomly plays all tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder
DISC RND	:	Randomly plays all tracks of current disc
ALL RND	:	Randomly plays all tracks of the discs in the magazine

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "**RPT OFF**" or "**RND OFF**."
- To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

See page 9 for changing the display information.

ENGLISH

Listening to the satellite radio

Before operating, connect either one of the following (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of this unit.

- **JVC SIRIUS satellite radio System**, SC-C1 and KS-SRA100, PnP, SC-VDOC1 and KS-SRA100, for listening to the SIRIUS Satellite radio.
- **XM satellite radio System**, JVC Smart Digital Adapter–XMDJVC100, CNP2000UC and CNPJVC1 for listening to the XM Satellite radio.

GCI (Global Control Information) update

- If channels are updated after subscription, updating starts automatically. "UPDATING" flashes and no sound can be heard.
- Update takes a few minutes to complete.
- During update, you cannot operate your satellite radio.

Activate your SIRIUS subscription after connection

1

2

SIRIUS Satellite radio starts updating all the SIRIUS channels.
Once completed, SIRIUS Satellite radio tunes in to the preset channel, CH184.

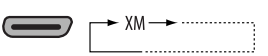
3 **Check your SIRIUS ID, see page 24.**

4 **Contact SIRIUS on the internet at <http://activate.siriusradio.com/> to activate your subscription, or you can call SIRIUS toll-free at 1-888-539-SIRIUS (7474).**
"SUB UPDT PRESS ANY KEY" scrolls on the display once subscription has been completed.

Activate your XM subscription after connection

- Only Channel 0, 1, and 247 are available before activation.

1

2 

XMDirect™ Tuner Box or XMDirect2 Tuner System starts updating all the XM channels. "Channel 1" is tuned in automatically.

3 **Check your XM Satellite radio ID labelled on the casing of the XMDirect™ Tuner Box or XMDirect2 Tuner System, or tune in to "Channel 0" (see page 17).**

4 **Contact XM Satellite radio on the internet at <http://xmradio.com/activation/> to activate your subscription, or you can call 1-800-XM-RADIO (1-800-967-2346).**
Once completed, the unit tunes in to one of the available channels (Channel 4 or higher).

1	SRC	**Select "SIRIUS" or "XM."**
2		**Select a category.** SIRIUS: If you select "ALL," you can tune in to all the channels of all categories.
3		**Select a channel to listen.** • Holding the button changes the channels rapidly. • While searching, invalid and unsubscribed channels are skipped. XM: If you do not select a channel within 15 seconds, category selected in step **2** is canceled. You can select all channels of all categories now (including non-categorised channels).

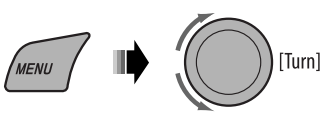
Storing channels in memory

You can preset up to 18 channels for both SIRIUS and XM.

Ex.: Storing channel into preset number "04."

1 Tune in to a channel you want to store (see steps 1 – 3 above).

2 Select preset number "04."



3

Change the display information

DISP

Category name → Channel name → Artist name → Composer name* → Song/program name/title → Clock → (back to the beginning)

* *Only for SIRIUS Satellite radio.*

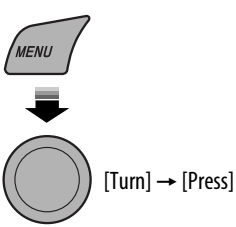
Checking the XM Satellite radio ID

While selecting "XM," select "Channel 0."

The display alternately shows "RADIO ID" and the 8-digit (alphanumeric) ID number.

To cancel the ID number display, select any channel other than "Channel 0."

Selecting SIRIUS/XM preset station



Listening to the iPod

Before operating, connect the **Interface adapter for iPod**, KS-PD100 (separately purchased) to the CD changer jack on the rear of the unit.

Preparation: Make sure "CH / IPOD" is selected in the "SRC SELECT" → "EXT IN" setting, see page 26.

1	SRC	**Select "IPOD."**
2		**Select a song.** Playback starts automatically.

Selecting a track from the menu

1 Enter the main menu.

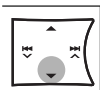
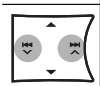
This mode will be canceled if no operations are done for about 5 seconds.

2 Select the desired menu.

PLAYLISTS ↔ ARTISTS ↔ ALBUMS ↔ SONGS ↔ GENRES ↔ COMPOSERS ↔ (back to the beginning)

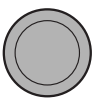
3 Confirm the selection.

- To return to the previous menu, press ▲.
- If a track is selected, playback starts automatically.

	Pause playback • To resume playback, press the button again.
	[Press] Select tracks [Hold] Reverse/fast-forward track

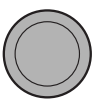
Selecting the playback modes

1



[Hold]

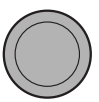
2



[Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT ↔ RANDOM

3



[Turn] → [Press]

REPEAT		
ONE RPT	:	Functions the same as "Repeat One" of the iPod.
ALL RPT	:	Functions the same as "Repeat All" of the iPod.
RANDOM		
ALBUM RND*	:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums" of the iPod.
SONG RND	:	Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs" of the iPod.

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "**RPT OFF**" or "**RND OFF**."
- To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

* *Functions only if you select "ALL" in "ALBUMS" of the main "MENU."*

Change the display information

DISP

Folder name → Track name → Current track number with the elapsed playing time → Current track number with the clock time → (back to the beginning)

ENGLISH

Listening to the other external components

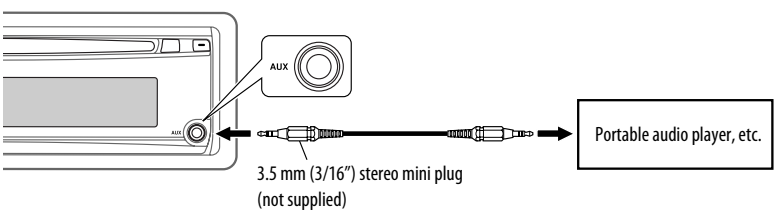
You can connect an external component to:

- CD changer jack on the rear of this unit using the following adapters:
  – **Line Input Adapter**, KS-U57 (separately purchsed)
  – **AUX Input Adapter**, KS-U58 (separately purchsed)
  Preparation: Make sure "EXT INPUT" is selected in the "SRC SELECT" → "EXT IN" setting, see page 26.

- AUX (auxiliary) input jack on the control panel.
  Preparation: Make sure "AUX ON" is selected in the "SRC SELECT" → "AUX IN" setting, see page 26.

1	SRC	**Select "EXT INPUT" or "AUX IN."**
2	—	**Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.**
3	+ [Turn] −	**Adjust the volume.**
4	—	**Adjust the sound as you want (see pages 20 and 21).**

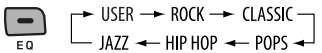
Connecting an external component to the AUX input jack



Selecting a preset sound mode

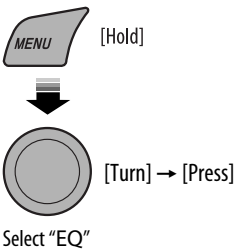
You can select a preset sound mode suitable to the music genre.

• See also page 23 ("EQ").



or

Selecting from Menu.



Select "EQ"

Preset value setting for each sound mode

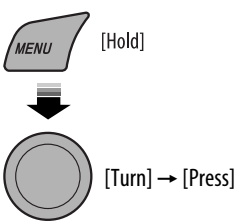
Sound mode	Preset value									
	BASS			MIDDLE			TREBLE			LOUD (loudness)
	Freq.	Level	Q	Freq.	Level	Q	Freq.	Level	Q	
USER	60 Hz	00	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.0	10.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	OFF
ROCK	100 Hz	+03	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	Q1.25	
CLASSIC	80 Hz	+01	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	Q1.25	
POPS	100 Hz	+02	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	+01	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+02	Q1.25	
HIP HOP	60 Hz	+04	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	−02	Q1.0	10.0 kHz	+01	Q1.25	
JAZZ	80 Hz	+03	Q1.0	1.0 kHz	00	Q1.25	10.0 kHz	+03	Q1.25	

Freq.: Frequency Q: Q-slope

Storing your own sound mode

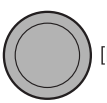
You can store your own adjustments in memory.

1 Select "USER" for "EQ."



Select "EQ" → "USER"

2 While "USER" is shown on the display...



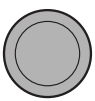
• If no operation is done for about 30 seconds, the operation will be canceled.

3 Select a tone.

[Turn] → [Press]

BASS ↔ MIDDLE ↔ TREBLE

4 Adjust the sound elements of the selected tone.



[Turn] → [Press]

1 Adjust the frequency.
2 Adjust the level.
3 Adjust the Q-slope.

Sound elements	Range/selectable items		
	BASS	MIDDLE	TREBLE
Frequency	60 Hz 80 Hz 100 Hz 120 Hz	500 Hz 1.0 kHz 1.5 kHz 2.5 kHz	7.5 kHz 10.0 kHz 12.5 kHz 15.0 kHz
Level	–06 to +06	–06 to +06	–06 to +06
Q	Q0.5 Q1.0 Q1.5 Q2.0	Q0.75 Q1.0 Q1.25 Q1.5	Q0.75 Q1.25

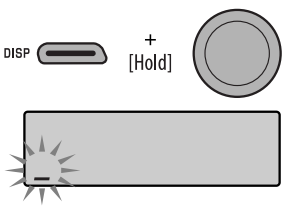
5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to adjust other sound characteristics.
The adjustment made will be stored automatically.

Title assignment

You can assign titles to 30 station frequencies (FM and AM) using 8 characters (maximum) for each title.
- When HD Radio tuner box is connected, this feature will be disable.

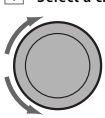
1 Select "FM" or "AM."

2 Show the title entry screen.



3 Assign a title.

1 Select a character.



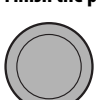
[Turn]

A	B	C	D	E	F	G
H	I	J	K	L	M	N
O	P	Q	R	S	T	U
V	W	X	Y	Z	0	1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	–	/	<	>	space	

2 Move to the next (or previous) character position.

3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 until you finish entering the title.

4 Finish the procedure.



[Press]

To erase the entire title

In step **2** above...

Bluetooth settings

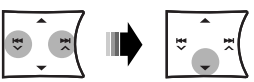
You can change the settings listed on the right column according to your preference.

1 Select "BT-PHONE" or "BT-AUDIO."

2 Enter the Bluetooth menu.

3 Select "SETTINGS."

4 Select a setting item.



AUTO CNNCT ↔ AUTO ANSWER*1 ↔ MSG INFO*2 ↔ MIC SETTING*1 ↔ VERSION*3

*1 *Appears only when a Bluetooth phone is connected.*

*2 *Appears only when a Bluetooth phone is connected and it is compatible with text message (notified through JVC Bluetooth adapter).*

*3 *Bluetooth Audio: Shows only "Version."*

5 Change the setting accordingly.

Setting menu (__: Initial)

AUTO CNNCT (connect)

When the unit is turned on, the connection is established automatically with...

OFF: No Bluetooth device.

LAST: The last connected Bluetooth device.

ORDER: The available registered Bluetooth device found at first.

AUTO ANSWER

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

ON: The unit answers the incoming calls automatically.

OFF: The unit does not answer the calls automatically. Answer the calls manually.

REJECT: The unit rejects all incoming calls.

MSG INFO (message info)

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

AUTOMATIC: The unit informs you of the arrival of a message by ringing and displaying "RCV MESSAGE" (receiving message).
- The display illuminate in blue (see "RING COLOR" on page 24).

MANUAL: The unit does not inform you of the arrival of a message.

MIC SETTING (microphone setting)

Only for the device being connected for "BT-PHONE."

Adjust microphone volume connected to the Bluetooth adapter, [LEVEL 01/02/03].

VERSION

The Bluetooth software and hardware versions are shown.

Menu operations

1

[Hold]

2 [Turn] → [Press]

3 **Repeat step 2 if necessary.**
- To return to the previous menu, press BACK.

Initial: **Underlined**

Category	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
DEMO	**DEMO** Display demonstration	• **DEMO ON** : Display demonstration will be activated automatically if no operation is done for about 20 seconds, [4]. • **DEMO OFF** : Cancels.
CLOCK	**CLOCK DISP***1 Clock display	• **CLOCK ON** : Clock time is shown on the display at all times when the power is turned off. • **CLOCK OFF** : Cancels; pressing DISP will show the clock time for about 5 seconds when the power is turned off, [5].
	CLOCK SET Clock setting	: Adjust the hour, then the minute, [4]. [Initial: 1:00]
	CLOCK ADJ*2 Clock adjustment	• **AUTO** : The built-in clock is automatically adjusted using the clock data provided via the satellite radio channel. • **OFF** : Cancels.
	TIME ZONE*2, *3 Time zone	: Select your residential area from one of the time zones for clock adjustment. **EASTERN, ATLANTIC, NEWFOUND, ALASKA, PACIFIC, MOUNTAIN, CENTRAL**
	DST*2, *3 Daylight savings time	• **DST ON** : Activates daylight savings time if your residential area is subject to DST. • **DST OFF** : Cancels.
EQ	**EQ** Equalizer	: Select a preset sound mode suitable to the music genre. **USER, ROCK, CLASSIC, POPS, HIP HOP, JAZZ**
DISPLAY	**DIMMER** Dimmer	• **DIMMER ON** : Dims the display and button illumination. • **DIMMER OFF** : Cancels.
	SCROLL*4 Scroll	• **SCROLL ONCE** : Scrolls the displayed information once. • **SCROLL AUTO** : Repeats scrolling (at 5-second intervals). • **SCROLL OFF** : Cancels. Pressing DISP for more than one second can scroll the display regardless of the setting.

*1 *If the power supply is not interrupted by turning off the ignition key of your car, it is recommended to select "*CLOCK OFF*" to save the car's battery.*

*2 *Displayed only when SIRIUS Satellite radio or XM Satellite radio is connected.*

*3 *Displayed only when "*CLOCK ADJ*" is set to "*AUTO*."*

*4 *Some characters or symbols will not be shown correctly (or will be blanked) on the display.*

Continued on the next page

Category	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]
DISPLAY	**TAG DISPLAY** Tag display	• **TAG ON** : Shows the Tag information while playing MP3/WMA tracks. • **TAG OFF** : Cancels.
TUNER	**AREA** Tuner channel interval	• **AREA US** : When using in North/Central/South America. AM/FM intervals are set to 10 kHz/200 kHz. • **AREA EU** : When using in any other areas. AM/FM intervals are set to 9 kHz/50 kHz (100 kHz during auto search). • **AREA SA** : When using in South American countries where FM interval is 100 kHz. AM interval is set to 10 kHz.
	MONO*5 Monaural mode	• **MONO ON** : Activate monaural mode to improve FM reception, but stereo effect will be lost, [8]. • **MONO OFF** : Restore the stereo effect.
	SID*6 SIRIUS ID	: Your SIRIUS identification number scrolls on the display 5 seconds after "SID" is selected, [16]. If no operation is done for about 30 seconds, the unit return to playback mode.
	BLEND HOLD*7 HD Radio reception mode	• **AUTO** : Switch between digital and analog audio automatically, [14]. • **DIGITAL** : Tuning to digital audio only. • **ANALOG** : Tuning to analog audio only.
	IF BAND Intermediate frequency band	• **AUTO** : Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) • **WIDE** : Subject to interference noises from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.
COLOR	**COLOR 01 – COLOR 29, USER**	: Select one of the preset or user color for display and button (except **EQ**/⏻/ATT/⏏) illumination. (See also page 26 for USER color setting.)
MENU COLOR	**MENU COLOR** Menu color	• **OFF** : Cancels. • **ON** : Changes the display and button (except **EQ**/⏻/ATT/⏏) illumination during menu, list search and playback mode operations.
RING COLOR	**RING COLOR***8 Ring color	• **OFF** : Cancels. • **ON** : When a call comes in, the display will flash in blue. • The display will change to the original color when the call is answered or the incoming call stops. When the unit receive a text message, the display only illuminate in blue.

*5 *Displayed only when the source is "FM" or "HD Radio."*

*6 *Displayed only when SIRIUS Satellite radio is connected.*

*7 *Displayed only when HD Radio tuner box is connected.*

*8 *Displayed only when Bluetooth adapter, KS-BTA200 is connected.*

Category	Menu items	Selectable settings, [reference page]	
AUDIO	**FADER***9 Fader	**R06 – F06**	: Adjust the front and rear speaker output balance. [Initial: 00]
	BALANCE*10 Balance	**L06 – R06**	: Adjust the left and right speaker output balance. [Initial: 00]
	LOUD Loudness	• **LOUD OFF** • **LOUD ON**	: Cancels. : Boost low and high frequencies to produce a well-balanced sound at a low volume level.
	VOL ADJUST Volume adjust	**VOL ADJ –05 — VOL ADJ +05** [Initial: VOL ADJ 00]	: Preset the volume adjustment level of each source (except FM), compared to the FM volume level. The volume level will automatically increase or decrease when you change the source. • Before making an adjustment, select the source you want to adjust. • "VOL ADJ FIX" appears on the display if "FM" is selected as the source.
	L/O MODE Line output mode	• **SUB.W** • **REAR**	: Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting a subwoofer (through an external amplifier). : Select if the REAR LINE OUT terminals are used for connecting the speakers (through an external amplifier).
	SUB.W FREQ*11 Subwoofer cutoff frequency	• **LOW** • **MID** • **HIGH**	: Frequencies lower than 72 Hz are sent to the subwoofer. : Frequencies lower than 111 Hz are sent to the subwoofer. : Frequencies lower than 157 Hz are sent to the subwoofer.
	SUB.W LEVEL*11 Subwoofer level	**SUB.W 00 — SUB.W 08**	: Adjust the subwoofer output level. [Initial: SUB.W 04]
	BEEP Keypress tone	• **BEEP OFF** • **BEEP ON**	: Deactivates the keypress tone. : Activates the keypress tone.
	AMP GAIN*12 Amplifier gain control	• **LOW POWER** • **HIGH POWER**	: VOLUME 00 – VOLUME 30 (Select if the maximum power of each speaker is less than 50 W to prevent damaging the speaker.) : VOLUME 00 – VOLUME 50

*9 *If you are using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to "00."*

*10 *This adjustment will not affect the subwoofer output.*

*11 *Displayed only when "*L/O MODE*" is set to "*SUB.W*."*

*12 *The volume level automatically changes to "VOLUME 30" if you change to "*LOW POWER*" with the volume level set higher than "VOLUME 30."*

Continued on the next page

Category	Menu items	Selectable setting, [reference page]
SRC SELECT	**AM***13 AM station	• **AM OFF** : Disable "AM" in source selection. • **AM ON** : Enable "AM" in source selection, [5].
	EXT IN*14,*15 External input	• **CH / IPOD** : To use a JVC CD changer, [15], or an Apple iPod, [18]. • **EXT INPUT** : To connect portable audio player to the CD changer jack, [19].
	AUX IN*16 Auxiliary input	• **AUX OFF** : Disable "AUX IN" in source selection. • **AUX ON** : Enable "AUX IN" in source selection, [5].

*13 *Displayed only when any source other than "AM" is selected.*

*14 *Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—FM, AM, CD, Bluetooth, HD Radio, or AUX IN.*

*15 *Not required for HD Radio broadcast/SIRIUS/XM tuners and Bluetooth.*

*16 *Displayed only when any source other than "AUX IN" is selected.*

Color settings

Creating your own color —USER Color

You can create your own colors—"DAY COLOR" or "NIGHT COLOR."

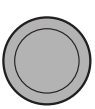
DAY COLOR: Used when "DIMMER" is set to "DIMMER OFF."

NIGHT COLOR: Used when "DIMMER" is set to "DIMMER ON."

1

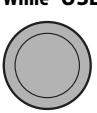
[Hold]

2 Select "COLOR" → "USER."



[Turn] → [Press]

3 While "USER" is shown on the display...



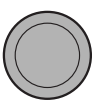
[Hold]

4

[Turn] → [Press]

DAY COLOR ↔ NIGHT COLOR

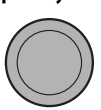
5 Select a primary color.



[Turn] → [Press]

RED ↔ GREEN ↔ BLUE

6 Adjust the level (00 to 31) of the selected primary color.



[Turn] → [Press]

7 Repeat steps 5 and 6 to adjust other primary colors.

8 Exit from the setting.

- If no operation is done for about 30 seconds, the operation will be canceled.

More about this unit

Basic operations

Turning on the power

- By pressing SRC button on the unit, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback also starts.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a track, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously next time you turn on the power.

General

- If you change the source while listening to a disc, playback stops.
  Next time you select "CD" as the playback source, playback will start from where it had been stopped previously.
- After ejecting a disc, "NO DISC" appears and you cannot operate some of the buttons. Insert another disc or press SRC to select another playback source.
- If no operation is done for about 30 seconds after pressing MENU button, the operation will be canceled.

Tuner operations

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
  – All previously stored stations are erased and the stations are stored anew.
  – When SSM is over, the station stored in the lowest preset number will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, the previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.

Disc operations

Caution for DualDisc playback

- The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

General

- This unit has been designed to reproduce CDs/CD Texts, and CD-Rs (Recordable)/CD-RWs (Rewritable) in audio CD (CD-DA), MP3 and WMA formats.
- When a disc is inserted upside down, "PLEASE" and "EJECT" appear alternately on the display. Press ⏏ to eject the disc.
- MP3 and WMA "tracks" (words "file" and "track" are used interchangeably) are recorded in "folders."
- While fast-forwarding or reversing on an MP3 or WMA disc, you can only hear intermittent sounds.

Playing a CD-R or CD-RW

- Use only "finalized" CD-Rs or CD-RWs.
- This unit can only play back files of the same type as those detected first if a disc includes both audio CD (CD-DA) files and MP3/WMA files.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some CD-Rs or CD-RWs may not play back on this unit because of their disc characteristics, or for the following reasons:
  – Discs are dirty or scratched.
  – Moisture condensation has occurred on the lens inside the unit.
  – The pickup lens inside the unit is dirty.
  – The files on the CD-R/CD-RW are written using the "Packet Write" method.
  – There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stained, scratched, warped, etc.).

Continued on the next page

- CD-RWs may require a longer readout time since the reflectance of CD-RWs is lower than that of regular CDs.
- Do not use the following CD-Rs or CD-RWs:
  – Discs with stickers, labels, or a protective seal stuck to the surface.
  – Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.

  Using these discs under high temperature or high humidity may cause malfunctions or damage to the unit.

Playing an MP3/WMA disc

- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files with the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for MP3 files and for WMA files.
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back MP3/WMA files meeting the conditions below:
  – Bit rate: 8 kbps — 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency:
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG-1)
    24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG-2)
  – Disc format: ISO 9660 Level 1/Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name
- The maximum number of characters for file/folder names vary depending on the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3> or <.wma>).
  – ISO 9660 Level 1: up to 12 characters
  – ISO 9660 Level 2: up to 31 characters
  – Romeo: up to 128 characters
  – Joliet: up to 64 characters
  – Windows long file name: up to 128 characters
- This unit can recognize a total of 512 files, 255 folders, and 8 hierarchical levels.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).

  Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in the elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. In particular, this difference becomes noticeable after performing the search function.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
  – MP3 files encoded in MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
  – MP3 files encoded in an inappropriate format.
  – MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
  – WMA files encoded in lossless, professional, and voice format.
  – WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
  – WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
  – Files which have data such as AIFF, ATRAC3, etc.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, it is automatically inserted into the loading slot again to protect it from dust. Playback starts automatically.

Bluetooth operations

General

- While driving, do not perform complicated operation such as dialing the numbers, using phone book, etc. When you perform these operations, stop your car in a safe place.
- Some Bluetooth devices may not be connected to this unit depending on the Bluetooth version of the device.
- This unit may not work for some Bluetooth devices.
- Connecting condition may vary depending on the circumstances around you.
- When the unit is turned off, the device is disconnected.

Warning messages for Bluetooth operations

- **ERROR CNNCT** (Error Connection):
  The device is registered but the connection has failed. Use "CONNECT" to connect the device again. (See page 12.)

- **ERROR**
  Try the operation again. If "ERROR" appears again, check if the device supports the function you have tried.
- **UNFOUND**
  No available Bluetooth device is detected by "SEARCH."
- **LOADING**
  The unit is updating the phone book*.
  * *Displays only when your cellular phone is equipped with these functions and is compatible with this unit.*
- **PLEASE WAIT**
  The unit is preparing to use the Bluetooth function. If the message does not disappear, turn off and turn on the unit, then connect the device again (or reset the unit).
- **RESET 8**
  Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.

Satellite radio

- To know more about SIRIUS Satellite radio or to sign up, visit <http://www.sirius.com>.
- For the latest channel listings and programming information, or to sign up for XM Satellite radio, visit <http://www.xmradio.com>.

iPod

- You can control the following types of iPods through the interface adapter.
  – iPod with dock connector (3rd Generation)
  – iPod with Click Wheel (4th Generation)
  – iPod mini
  – iPod photo
  – iPod nano*1
  – iPod video (5th Generation)*2
  – iPod classic 2007*2
  – iPod nano (3rd Generation)*2
  *1 *When you connect the iPod nano to the interface adapter, be sure to disconnect the headphones; otherwise, no sound is heard.*
  *2 *It is not possible to browse video files on the "Videos" menu.*
- If the iPod does not play correctly, please update your iPod software to the latest version. For details about updating your iPod, visit <http://www.apple.com>.
- When you turn on this unit, the iPod is charged through this unit.
- While the iPod is connected, all operations from the iPod are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
- If the text information includes more than 11 characters, it scrolls on the display. This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:
When operating an iPod, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site: <http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/> (English website only)

Title assignment

- If you try to assign titles to more than 30 station frequencies, "NAME FULL" appears. Delete unwanted titles before assignment.

Menu operations

- If you change the "AMP GAIN" setting from "HIGH POWER" to "LOW POWER" while the volume level is set higher than "VOLUME 30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "VOLUME 30."

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
General	• Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).
	• "AUX" cannot be selected.	Check the "SRC SELECT" → "AUX IN" setting (see page 26).
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually.
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the antenna firmly.
	• "AM" cannot be selected.	Check the "SRC SELECT" → "AM" setting (see page 26).
Disc playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played back. • Tracks on the CD-R/CD-RW cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized CD-R/CD-RW. • Finalize the CD-R/CD-RW with the component which you used for recording.
	• Disc can neither be played back nor ejected.	• Unlock the disc (see page 9). • Eject the disc forcibly (see page 3).
	• Disc sound is sometimes interrupted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc. • Check the cords and connections.
	• "NO DISC" appears on the display.	Insert a playable disc into the loading slot.
	• "PLEASE" and "EJECT" appear alternately on the display.	Press ⏏, then insert a disc correctly.
MP3/WMA playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	• Use a disc with MP3/WMA tracks recorded in a format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, Level 2, Romeo, or Joliet. • Add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to the file names.

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
MP3/WMA playback	• Noise is generated.	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3 or WMA tracks.)
	• A longer readout time is required ("READING" keeps flashing on the display).	Do not use too many hierarchical levels and folders.
	• Tracks do not play back in the order you have intended them to play.	The playback order is determined when the files are recorded.
	• The elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc.
	• The correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (upper case), numbers, and a limited number of symbols.
Bluetooth*	• Bluetooth device does not detect the unit.	The unit can be connected with one Bluetooth cellular phone and one Bluetooth audio device at a time. While connecting a device, this unit cannot be detected from another device. Disconnect currently connected device and search again.
	• The unit does not detect the Bluetooth device.	• Check the Bluetooth setting of the device. • Search from the Bluetooth device. After the device detects the unit, select "OPEN" on the unit to connect the device. (See page 11.)
	• The unit does not make pairing with the Bluetooth device.	• Enter the same PIN code for both the unit and target device. • Select the device name from "SPECIAL," then try to connect again. (See page 11.) • Try to pair/connect from the Bluetooth device.
	• Echo or noise occurs.	Adjust the microphone unit position.
	• Phone sound quality is poor.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth cellular phone. • Move the car to a place where you can get a better signal reception.

* *For Bluetooth operations, refer also to the instructions supplied with the Bluetooth Adapter.*

Continued on the next page

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Bluetooth	• The sound is interrupted or skipped during playback of a Bluetooth audio device.	• Reduce the distance between the unit and the Bluetooth audio device. • Disconnect the device connected for "BT-PHONE." • Turn off, then turn on the unit. • (When the sound is not yet restored,) connect the device again.
	• The connected audio device cannot be controlled.	Check whether the connected audio device supports AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile).
HD Radio reception	• Sound quality changes when receiving HD Radio stations.	Fix the reception mode either to "DIGITAL" or "ANALOG" (see pages 14 and 24).
	• No sound can be heard.	• "ANALOG" is selected when receiving all digital broadcast of HD Radio station. Select "DIGITAL" or "AUTO" (see pages 14 and 24). • "DIGITAL" is selected when receiving weak digital signals or receiving conventional radio broadcast. Select "ANALOG" or "AUTO" (see pages 14 and 24).
	• "RESET 8" appears on the display.	Reconnect this unit and the HD Radio tuner box correctly, then reset the unit.
CD changer	• "NO DISC" appears on the display.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "NO MAGAZINE" appears on the display.	Insert the magazine.
	• "RESET 8" appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "RESET 1" – "RESET 7" appears on the display.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 3).

	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
Satellite radio	• "CALL 1-888-539-SIRIUS TO SUBSCRIBE" scrolls on the display while listening to the SIRIUS Satellite radio.	Starts subscribing to SIRIUS Satellite radio (see page 16).
	• No sound can be heard. "UPDATING" appears on the display.	The unit is updating the channel information and it takes a few minutes to complete.
	• "NO SIGNAL" appears on the display.	Move to an area where signals are stronger.
	• "NO ANTENNA" or "ANTENNA"appears on the display.	Connect the antenna firmly.
	• "NO CHANNEL" appears on the display for about 5 seconds, then returns to the previous display while listening to the SIRIUS Satellite radio.	No broadcast on the selected channel. Select another channel or continue listening to the previous channel.
	• "NO (information)*" scrolls on the display while listening to the SIRIUS Satellite radio. • "---" appears on the display while listening to the XM Satellite radio.	No text information for the selected channel.
	• "---" appears on the display for about 2 seconds, then returns to the previous channel while listening to the XM Satellite radio.	Selected channel is no longer available or is unauthorized. Select another channel or continue listening to the previous channel.
	• "OFF AIR" appears on the display while listening to the XM Satellite radio.	Selected channel is not broadcasting at this time. Select another channel or continue listening to the previous channel.
	• "LOADING" appears on the display while listening to the XM Satellite radio.	The unit is loading the channel information and audio. Text information are temporarily unavailable.
	• "RESET 8" appears on the display. • Satellite radio does not work at all.	Reconnect this unit and the satellite radio correctly and reset this unit.

* *NO CATEGORY, NO ARTIST, NO COMPOSER, and NO SONG/PROGRAM.*

Continued on the next page

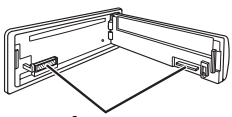
	Symptoms	Remedies/Causes
iPod	• The iPod does not turn on or does not work.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Update the firmware version. • Charge the battery.
	• The sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod.
	• "NO IPOD" appears on the display.	• Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Charge the battery.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart the playback operation (see page 18).
	• No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano.	• Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano. • Update the firmware version of the iPod nano.
	• "NO FILES" appears on the display.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod.
	• "RESET 1" – "RESET 7" appears on the display.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod. Then, connect it again.
	• "RESET 8" appears on the display.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
	• The iPod's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod.

- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Victor Company of Japan, Limited (JVC) is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- HD Radio™ and the HD Radio Ready logo are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.
- "SIRIUS" and the SIRIUS dog logo are registered trademarks of SIRIUS Satellite Radio Inc.
- XM and its corresponding logos are registered trademarks of XM Satellite Radio Inc.
- "SAT Radio," the SAT Radio logo and all related marks are trademarks of SIRIUS Satellite Radio Inc., and XM Satellite Radio, Inc.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors. To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connectors

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the unit in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the unit may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture has evaporated.

How to handle discs

Center holder

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc in its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs in cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly. If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvents (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.

To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:

Single CD —8 cm (3-3/16") disc

Warped disc

Sticker and sticker residue

Stick-on label

Unusual shape

C-thru Disc (semi-transparent disc)

Transparent or semi-transparent parts on its recording area

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION		
Power Output:	**20 W RMS × 4 Channels at 4 Ω and ≤ 1% THD+N**	
Signal-to-Noise Ratio:	80 dBA (reference: 1 W into 4 Ω)	
Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
Tone Control Range:	Bass:	±12 dB (60 Hz, 80 Hz, 100 Hz, 120 Hz) Q0.5, Q1.0, Q1.5, Q2.0
	Middle:	±12 dB (500 Hz, 1.0 kHz, 1.5 kHz, 2.5 kHz) Q0.75, Q1.0, Q1.25, Q1.5
	Treble:	±12 dB (7.5 kHz, 10.0 kHz, 12.5 kHz, 15.0 kHz) Q0.75, Q1.25
Frequency Response:		40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
Line-Out Level/Impedance:		2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
Subwoofer-Out Level/Impedance:		2.5 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
Output Impedance:		1 kΩ
Other Terminal:		AUX (auxiliary) input jack, CD changer jack, Antenna input

TUNER SECTION			
Frequency Range:	FM:	with channel interval set to 100 kHz or 200 kHz	87.5 MHz to 107.9 MHz
		with channel interval set to 50 kHz	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
	AM:	with channel interval set to 10 kHz	530 kHz to 1 710 kHz
		with channel interval set to 9 kHz	531 kHz to 1 602 kHz
FM Tuner	Usable Sensitivity:		11.3 dBf (1.0 µV/75 Ω)
	50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:		16.3 dBf (1.8 µV/75 Ω)
	Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):		65 dB
	Frequency Response:		40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
	Stereo Separation:		35 dB
AM Tuner	Sensitivity:		20 µV
	Selectivity:		35 dB

CD PLAYER SECTION	
Type:	Compact disc player
Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)
Number of Channels:	2 channels (stereo)
Frequency Response:	5 Hz to 20 000 Hz
Dynamic Range:	96 dB
Signal-to-Noise Ratio:	98 dB
Wow and Flutter:	Less than measurable limit
MP3 Decoding Format: (MPEG1/2 Audio Layer 3)	Max. Bit Rate: 320 kbps
WMA (Windows Media® Audio) Decoding Format:	Max. Bit Rate: 192 kbps

GENERAL		
Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)
Grounding System:		Negative ground
Allowable Operating Temperature:		0°C to +40°C (32°F to 104°F)
Dimensions (W × H × D): (approx.)	Installation Size:	182 mm × 52 mm × 160 mm (7-3/16″ × 2-1/16″ × 6-5/16″)
	Panel Size:	188 mm × 58 mm × 6 mm (7-7/16″ × 2-5/16″ × 1/4″)
Mass:		1.3 kg (2.9 lbs) (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

If a kit is necessary for your car, consult your telephone directory for the nearest car audio speciality shop.

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

Still having trouble??

USA ONLY

Call 1-800-252-5722

http://www.jvc.com

We can help you!

JVC

EN, SP

© 2009 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

0709DTSMDTJEIN

KD-S26

Installation/Connection Manual
Manual de instalación/conexión

GET0642-002A
[J]

0709DTSMDTJEIN
EN, SP

© 2009 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

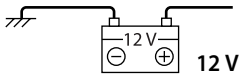
ENGLISH | ESPAÑOL

PREPARATIONS / *PREPARATIVOS*

You need the installation kits which corresponds to your car. / *Utilice los kits de instalación que correspondan a su vehículo.*

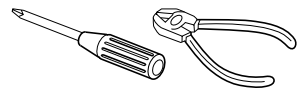
• Mark all the check boxes (☑) to make sure you have follow the instructions and the listed parts. / *Marque todas las casillas (☑) para cerciorarse de que se han seguido las instrucciones, y de tener las piezas mencionadas.*

Check the battery system in your car / *Verifique el sistema de batería de su vehículo*

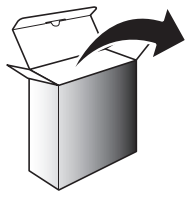
☐ 

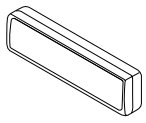
12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground / *12 V CC, NEGATIVO a masa*

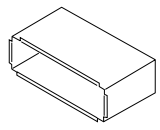
Prepare this before installation / *Prepare esto antes de la instalación*

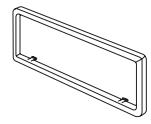
☐ 

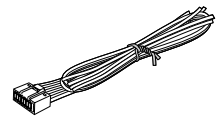
Parts list for installation and connection / *Lista de piezas para instalación y conexión*

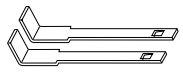


☐ Ⓐ Control panel / *Panel de control* 

☐ Ⓑ Sleeve / *Cubierta* 

☐ Ⓒ Trim plate / *Placa de guarnición* 

☐ Ⓓ Power cord / *Cordón de alimentación* 

☐ Ⓔ Handles / *Manijas* 

☐ Ⓕ Remote controller / *Control remoto*

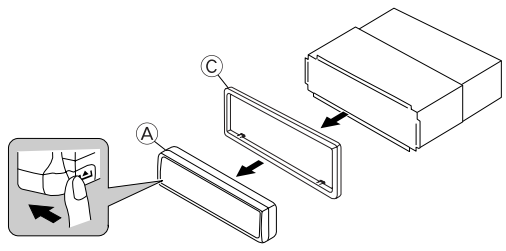
☐ Ⓖ Battery / *Pila*

INSTALLATION / *INSTALACION*

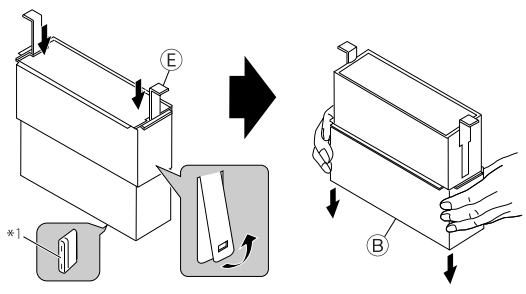
☐ The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits. / *La siguiente ilustración muestra una instalación típica. Si tiene alguna pregunta o necesita información acerca de las herramientas para instalación, consulte con su concesionario de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles o a una compañía que suministra tales herramientas.*

In-dash mounting / *Montaje en el tablero de instrumentos*

1

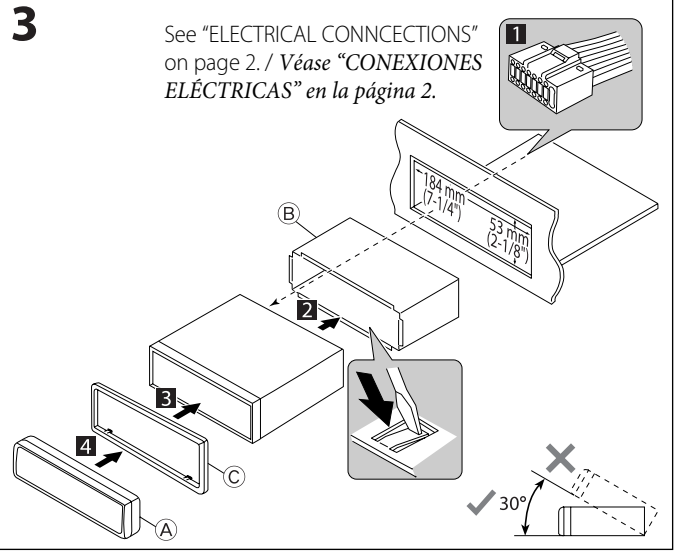


2



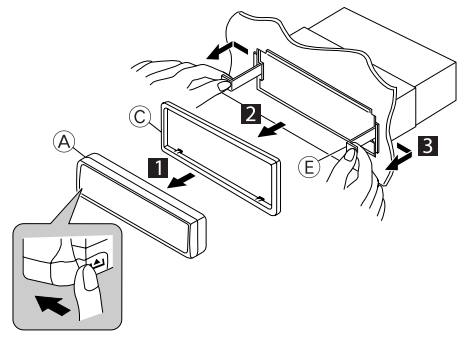
3

See "ELECTRICAL CONNCECTIONS" on page 2. / *Véase "CONEXIONES ELÉCTRICAS" en la página 2.*



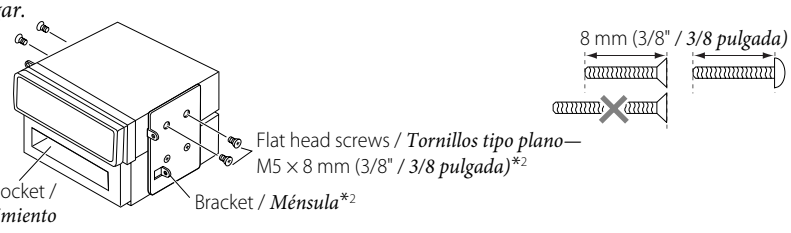
Removing the unit / *Extracción de la unidad*

Release the rear section first... / *Primero libere la sección trasera...*

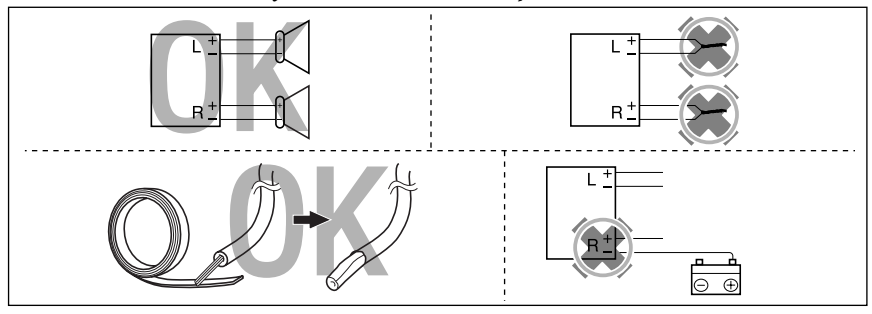


When installing the unit without using the sleeve / *Instalación de la unidad sin utilizar la cubierta*

In a Toyota car for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place.
En un automóvil Toyota, por ejemplo, en primer lugar desmonte el autorradio e instale la unidad en su lugar.



PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections / *PRECAUCIONES sobre las conexiones de la fuente de alimentación y de los altavoces*



*1 When you stand the unit, be careful not to damage the fuse on the rear.

*2 Not supplied for this unit.

*1 *Al poner la unidad vertical, tenga cuidado de no dañar el fusible provisto en la parte posterior.*

*2 *No suministrado con esta unidad.*

TROUBLESHOOTING / *LOCALIZACIÓN DE AVERIAS*

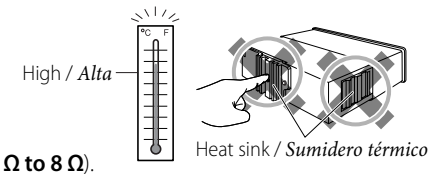
- **The fuse blows.** ⇨ Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.** ⇨ Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.** ⇨ Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.** ⇨ Is the speaker output lead grounded? ; Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interfere with sounds.** ⇨ Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **This unit becomes hot.** ⇨ Is the speaker output lead grounded? ; Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **This unit does not work at all.** ⇨ Have you reset your unit?

- ***El fusible se quema.*** ⇨ *¿Están los conductores rojo y negro correctamente conectados?*
- ***No es posible conectar la alimentación.*** ⇨ *¿Está el cable amarillo conectado?*
- ***No sale sonido de los altavoces.*** ⇨ *¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz cortocircuitado?*
- ***El sonido presenta distorsión.*** ⇨ *¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz conectado a masa? / ¿Están los terminales "–" de los altavoces L y R conectados a una masa común?*
- ***Perturbación de ruido.*** ⇨ *¿El terminal de tierra trasero está conectado al chasis del automóvil utilizando los cordones más corto y más grueso?*
- ***La unidad se calienta.*** ⇨ *¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz conectado a masa? / ¿Están los terminales "–" de los altavoces L y R conectados a una masa común?*
- ***Este receptor no funciona en absoluto.*** ⇨ *¿Reinicializó el receptor?*

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS / *CONEXIONES ELECTRICAS*

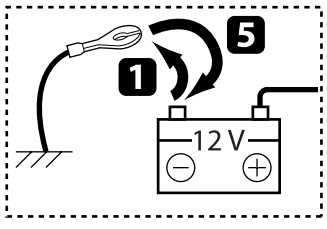
☐ Make sure to disconnect the battery's negative terminal. / *Asegúrese de desconectar el terminal negativo de la batería.*

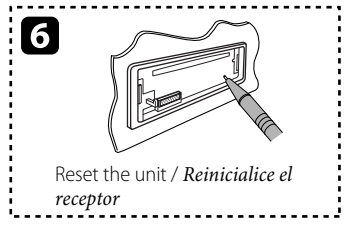
- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation. / *Asegúrese de volver a conectar a masa esta unidad al chasis del automóvil después de la instalación.***



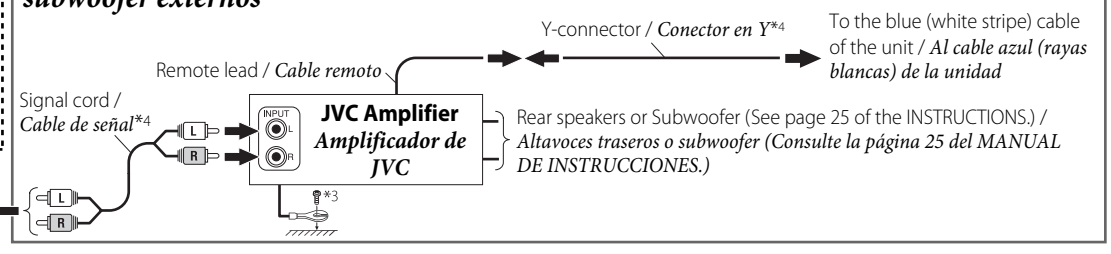
Note / *Nota*:

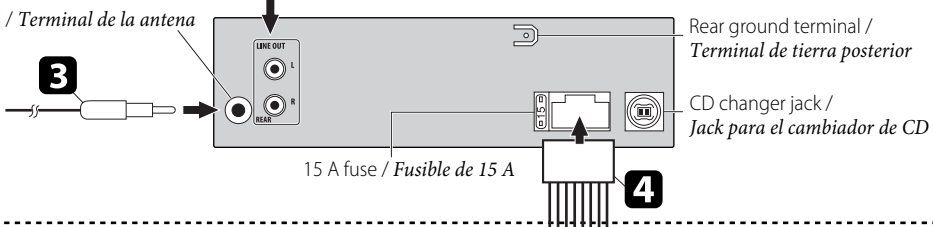
It is recommended to connect to the speakers with maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "AMP GAIN" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 25 of the INSTRUCTIONS). / *Se recomienda conectar los altavoces con una potencia máxima de más de 50 W (tanto atrás como adelante, con una impedancia de **4 Ω a 8 Ω**). Si la potencia máxima es de menos de 50 W, cambie "AMP GAIN" para evitar daños en los altavoces (consulte la página 25 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES).*

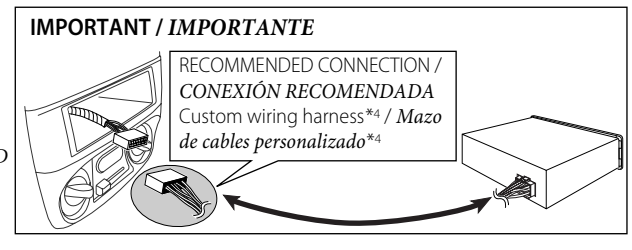


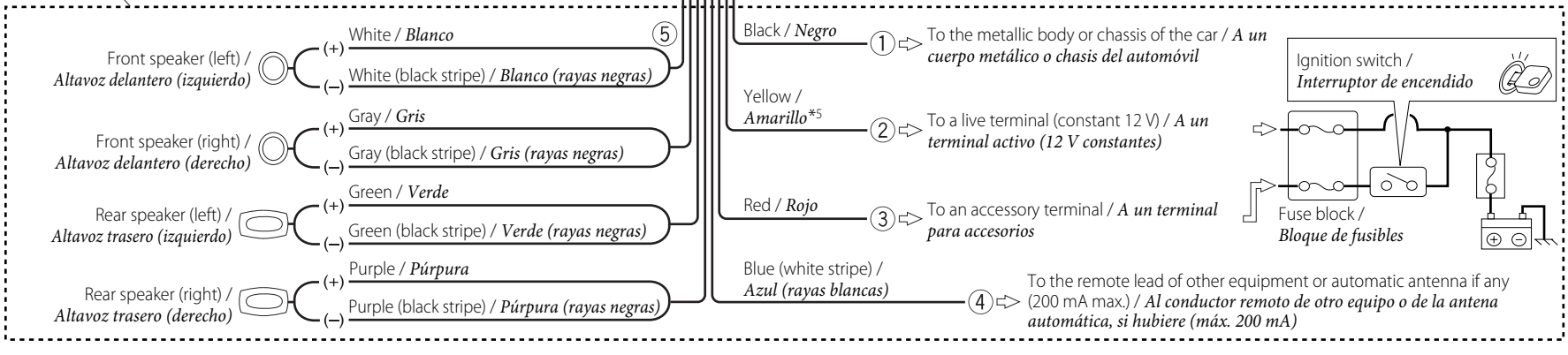


Connecting the external amplifier or subwoofer / *Conexión de los amplificadores o subwoofer externos*



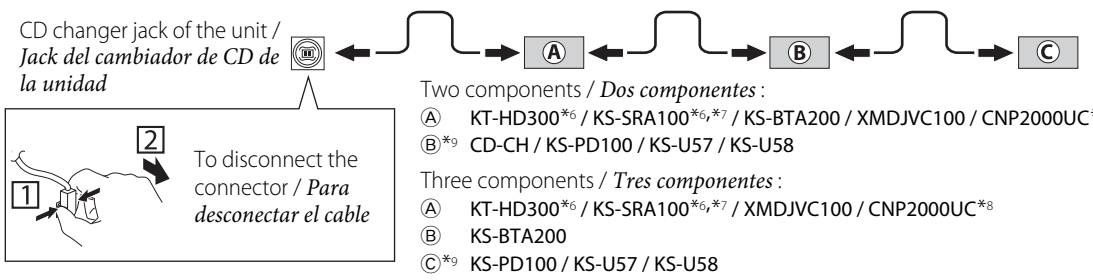






Connecting the external components in series / Conexión de componentes externos en serie

When connecting the external components, refer also to the manuals supplied for the components and adapter. / *Cuando conecte componentes externos, consulte, también, los manuales suministrados con los componentes y el adaptador.*



Two components / *Dos componentes* :
Ⓐ KT-HD300*6 / KS-SRA100*6,*7 / KS-BTA200 / XMDJVC100 / CNP2000UC*8
Ⓑ*9 CD-CH / KS-PD100 / KS-U57 / KS-U58

Three components / *Tres componentes* :
Ⓐ KT-HD300*6 / KS-SRA100*6,*7 / XMDJVC100 / CNP2000UC*8
Ⓑ KS-BTA200
Ⓒ*9 KS-PD100 / KS-U57 / KS-U58

Not recommended... / *No recomendado...*

Caution / *Precaucion*:

Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off. / *Antes de conectar los componentes externos, asegúrese de que la unidad esté apagada.*

You can connect the following JVC components to the CD changer jack. / *Puede conectar los siguientes componentes JVC al jack del cambiador de CD.*

JVC component / *Componente JVC*	**Model name / *Nombre del modelo***
CD changer (CD-CH) / *Cambiador de CD (CD-CH)*	CH-X1500, etc.
HD Radio™ tuner box / *Sintonizador HD Radio™*	KT-HD300

You can also connect the following components through the various JVC adapters or system. / *También puede conectar los siguientes componentes a través de los diversos adaptadores o sistema JVC.*
• Connection cords may need to be purchased separately. / *Puede ser necesario comprar los cables de conexión por separado.*

Component / *Componente*	**Adapter/System / *Adaptador/Sistema***	**Model name / *Nombre del modelo***
Bluetooth device / *Dispositivo Bluetooth*	Bluetooth adapter / *Adaptador Bluetooth*	KS-BTA200
iPod / *iPod*	Interface adapter for iPod / *Adaptador de interfaz para iPod*	KS-PD100
XMDirect™ Tuner Box / *XMDirect™ Tuner Box*	Smart Digital Adapter / *Adaptador digital inteligente*	XMDJVC100
XMDirect2 Tuner System / *Sistema de sintonizador XMDirect2*	XM satellite radio System / *Sistema de radio XM Satellite*	CNP2000UC, CNPJVC1
SIRIUS satellite radio / *Radio por satélite SIRIUS*	SIRIUS satellite radio System / *Sistema de radio satelital SIRIUS*	SC-C1, KS-SRA100
SIRIUS satellite radio / *Radio por satélite SIRIUS*	SIRIUS satellite radio System / *Sistema de radio satelital SIRIUS*	PnP, SC-VDOC1, KS-SRA100
Portable audio player with line output jacks / *Reproductor de audio portátil con jacks de salida de línea*	Line input adapter / *Adaptador de entrada por línea*	KS-U57
Portable audio player with 3.5 mm (3/16") stereo mini jack / *Reproductor de audio portátil con jack mini estéreo de 3,5 mm (3/16 pulgada)*	AUX input adapter / *Adaptador de entrada AUX*	KS-U58

XM Radio and SIRIUS satellite radio cannot be used together. / *No puede utilizar juntas la radio XM y la radio satelital SIRIUS.*

• HD Radio™ is a proprietary trademark of iBiquity Digital Corp. / *HD Radio™ es una marca comercial de iBiquity Digital Corp.*
• iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. / *iPod es una marca comercial de Apple Inc., registrada en los EE.UU. y otros países.*

*3 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint.
*4 Not supplied for this unit.
*5 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected; otherwise, the power cannot be turned on.
*6 You need to connect the power cord supplied for the component separately.
*7 This model is a component of SIRIUS satellite radio System.
*8 This model is a component of XM satellite radio System.
*9 To use these components, set the external input setting correctly (see page 26 of the INSTRUCTIONS).

*3 *Fije firmemente el cable de tierra a la carrocería metálica o al chasis—a un lugar no cubierto con pintura.*
*4 *No suministrado con esta unidad.*
*5 *Antes de comprobar el funcionamiento de esta unidad previa a de la instalación, es necesario conectar este cable, de lo contrario no se podrá conectar la alimentación.*
*6 *Es necesario conectar, aparte, el cable de alimentación suministrado con el componente.*
*7 *Este modelo es un componente del sistema de radio satelital SIRIUS.*
*8 *Este modelo es un componente del sistema de radio XM Satellite.*
*9 *Para utilizar estos componentes, configure el ajuste de entrada externa correctamente (consulte la página 26 del MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES).*